



100% Reliable and Trustworthy

Rapid Revision Book

Extensive Coverage - Simple Presentation - Time bound Revision

UPSC PRELIMS

2024

special edition

Medieval India HISTORY, ART and CULTURE

The benefits and impacts of '**RAPID REVISION BOOKS**' will **multiply** if you study them according to **MONTHLY 'REVISION AND PRACTICE' TIMETABLE**
released by SHIELD IAS.

CURRENT AFFAIRS REVISION CLASSES UPSC PRELIMS 2024

Period of coverage:
(from January 2023 till March 2024)

The 'HIGH QUALITY' of
'THE HINDU' Monthly Current Affairs Quiz
by SHIELD IAS

now comes in the form of...

Current Affairs Revision classes

starting
from

1st April 2024

Get confidence with the
highest quality coverage of
most relevant current affairs

Duration: One month

Daily classes: 6pm to 8pm (Monday to Saturday)

Mode: Online

Complete coverage for students in the classes

Simplified Class explanations

Class backup and crisp handouts

@Very Affordable Charges/-

We are a learning community, which
believes in hard work with smart ideas,
you can become member of this
community.

Your Membership will definitely take
you to Success in UPSC.



**REGISTER
NOW**

+91-7037272363

www.shieldias.in

UPSC PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION 2024

RAPID REVISION BOOKS

'Perfect' your revision for 26th May, 2024

PURPOSE: To provide a **HIGH QUALITY, PRECISE, CONCISE** and **CONFIDENCE BUILDING** revision books for fulfilling the needs of UPSC aspirants for the '**SUCCESS' in the Preliminary Examination 2024.**

With respect to the scheduled **Civil Services (Preliminary) Examination, 2024**, which is to be conducted on **26th May, 2024**, the most important need is a '**UPSC Standard Fast Revision Material**'.

This requirement of students is **fulfilled** by **SHIELD IAS 'RAPID REVISION BOOKS'**.

'RAPID REVISION BOOKS' are the series of **NINE BOOKLETS** covering the most important scoring portions of the General Studies (Preliminary) examination to provide confidence boosting edge in the final preparation.

Note: The benefits and impacts of '**RAPID REVISION BOOKS**' will **multiply** if you study them according to ***MONTHLY 'REVISION AND PRACTICE' TIMETABLE** released by **SHIELD IAS**.

* SHIELD IAS has launched for students '**MONTHLY REVISION AND PRACTICE TIMETABLE**'.

This timetable is made available for the **5 MONTH PERIOD** starting from **January 2024 till May 2024**, hence leading students to **26th May, 2024** through a proper '**DAILY TIME MANAGEMENT SCHEDULE**'. {Refer to the timetable: Visit website: www.shieldias.in (resources section)}

RAPID BOOK 3 MEDIEVAL INDIA- HISTORY, ART & CULTURE

Highlights of this book:

- One stop solution for the standard study material.
- Research and curation of content as per relevance of the examination.
- Covers the content comprehensively.
- Content combined with suitable images.
- Lucid presentation for speed reading and memorisation.
- Builds confidence for handling both MCQs and Essay type questions.

Hence, this revision book takes care of **detailed knowledge of subject**, and relevant **facts**, alongwith **sound mix of relational understanding**.

The overall emphasis is on making students supremely confident for the examination.

Start your journey of sound preparation with SHIELD IAS revision material to emerge ahead in the journey of **Civil Services Examination** preparation.

Relish the revision material.

Best of Efforts and Sound Luck!

From

Ritesh Kumar Singh (Academic Director, Shield IAS)

Ex- Civil Servant

Ex-Sr. Faculty & Head Content and Quality Management, Rau's IAS Study Circle

The Quality is Here Now!

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MEDIEVAL INDIA – HISTORY, ART & CULTURE			
STATE FORMATION UNDER THE RAJPUTS	01	RAJPUT ARCHITECTURE	14
IMPORTANT CHARACTERISTICS	02	HILL FORTS	14
LAND ASSIGNMENTS	03	PALACES	14
ADMINISTRATION	04	RAJPUT FEATURES	14
POST GURJARA-PRATIHARA	04	RAJPUT PAINTINGS	15
IMPORTANT TEXTS	05	MEWAR SCHOOL	15
THE CHAHAMANAS OR CHAUHANS OF AJMER	05	HADOTI SCHOOL	16
CHAHAMANA RULERS	06	DHUNDAR SCHOOL	16
CHANDELLAS OF BUNDELKHAND	07	JAIPUR STYLE	17
CHANDELLA RULERS	07	SHEKHAWATI STYLE	17
PARAMARAS OF MALWA	08	ALWAR STYLE PAINTINGS	17
PARAMARA RULERS	08	MIDDLE AND EASTERN KINGDOMS	18
CHALUKYAS OF GUJARAT/SOLANKI RAJPUTS	09	CHEDIS OF TRIPURI	18
CHALUKYAS RULERS	09	CHEDI RULERS	18
TOMARAS	10	SENAS OF BENGAL	19
GAHADAVALAS OF KANNAUJ	10	Vijaya Sena (c. 1095 – 1158 CE)	19
GAHADAVALAS RULERS	11	Ballal Sena (c. 1158 – 1179 CE)	19
KINGDOM OF KASHMIR AND NORTH-WEST	11	GANGAS OF ORISSA	20
KARKOTA DYNASTY	11	Lingaraj Temple	20
KARKOTA RULERS	11	Anantavarman Chodaganga (c. 1076)	21
UTPALA DYNASTY	12	Jagannath temple	21
Avanti Varman (c. 855 – 883 CE)	12	Narsimhadeva (c. 1238 – 1264 CE)	21
Sankara Varman (c. 883 – 902 CE)	12	SOUTH INDIA	22
YASHASKARA DYNASTY	12	CHOLA DYNASTY	22
Queen Didda (c. 958 – 1003 CE)	12	Vijayalaya (850 CE)	22
HINDU SHAHI DYNASTY	13	Aditya I (871 - 907 CE)	22
HINDU SHAHI KINGS	13	Parantaka I (907 - 955 CE)	23
		Parantaka II/ Sundara Chola (957 - 973 CE)	23
		Rajaraja Chola (985 - 1014 CE)	23
		Rajendra Chola I (1014 - 1044 CE)	23
		Rajadhiraja I (1044 - 1052 CE)	23
		Virarajendra (1063 - 1067 CE)	24

Kulottunga I (1070 - 1122 CE)	24	ARAB CONQUEST OF SIND (712 A.D.)	35
ART AND CULTURE	24	Caliphate	35
Portraits	25	ABBASID DYNASTY	36
Paintings	25	MAHMUD OF GHAZNI (A.D. 997-1030)	36
Music	25	Impact of Mahmud	36
Sculpture	25	GHURID DYNASTY AND MUHAMMAD GHORI	37
Drama	25	MUHAMMAD GHORI (C. 1173 – 1206 CE)	37
Brihadeeshvarar Temple	26	Causes for the failure of Hindu kingdoms	38
Gangaikonda Cholapuram	26	DELHI SULTANATE	39
Darasuram Temple	26	SLAVE DYNASTY	39
ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNANCE	26	Qutub-ud-din Aibak (c. 1206 – 1210 CE)	39
Kingship	26	Aram Shah (c. 1210 CE)	40
Central Administration	26	Iltutmish (c. 1210 – 1236 CE)	40
Provincial Administration	26	Raziya Sultan (c. 1236 – 1239 CE)	41
Divisions of Administration	27	Bahram Shah (c. 1240 – 1242 CE)	41
Nadu	27	Alauddin Masud Shah (c. 1242 – 1246 CE)	41
Administration of the Village	27	Nasiruddin Mahmud (c. 1246 – 1265 CE)	41
Variyams	27	Balban (c. 1266 – 1286 CE)	41
Revenue of Cholas	28	Kaiqubad (c. 1287 – 1290 CE)	42
WESTERN CHALUKYAS OF KALYANI/LATER WESTERN CHALUKYAS	28	KHILJI DYNASTY	43
Someshwara I 1042 -1068 CE	28	Jalal-ud-din Khalji (c. 1290 – 1296 CE)	43
Vikramaditya VI (c. 1068 – 1076 CE)	29	Alauddin Khalji (c. 1296 – 1316 CE)	43
EASTERN CHALUKYAS	29	Military Campaigns of Alauddin Khalji	43
HOYSALA DYNASTY	30	Administration of Alauddin Khalji	44
Vishnuvardhana or Bittiga	30	TUGHLUQ DYNASTY	45
HOYSALA ARCHITECTURE	31	Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq/Ghazi Malik	45
Lakshmi Narsimha Temple	31	Muhammad Bin Tughlaq/Jauna Khan (c. 1325 – 1351 CE)	45
KAKATIYAS OF WARANGAL	31	Firoz Shah Tughlaq (c. 1351 – 1388 CE)	47
KAKATIYAS RULERS	32	Administrative Reforms	47
YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI	33	SAYYID DYNASTY	48
YADAVAS RULERS	33		
Literature and Language	34		

Khizr Khan (c. 1414 – 1421 CE)	48	VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- ARCHITECTURE	62
Muhammad Shah (c. 1434 – 1443 CE)	48	VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- SCULPTURE	63
Alam Shah (c. 1445 – 1451 CE)	48	VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- PAINTINGS	63
LODHI DYNASTY	48	BAHMANI KINGDOM (1347-1526 A.D.)	64
Bahlol Lodhi (c. 1451 – 1489 CE)	48	Source material about the Bahmani Kingdom	65
Sikander Lodhi (c. 1489 – 1517 CE)	49	Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (c. 1347 – 1358 CE)	65
Ibrahim Lodhi (c. 1517 – 1526 CE)	49	Muhammad Shah I (1358 – 1377 CE)	66
DELHI SULTANATE ADMINISTRATION	49	Taj-ud-din Firoz Shah (c. 1397 – 1422 CE)	66
Central Administration	49	Ahmad Shah Wali (c. 1422 – 1435 CE)	66
Provincial Government	51	Humayun Shah (c. 1458 – 1461 CE)	67
DELHI SULTANATE ECONOMY	51	Mahmud Gawan (c. 1461 – 1481 CE)	67
DELHI SULTANATE SOCIETY	52	ADMINISTRATION	68
DELHI SULTANATE- ART, ARCHITECTURE, LITERATURE	53	MILITARY	68
DELHI SULTANATE – ART AND ARCHITECTURE	53	LITERATURE	68
DELHI SULTANATE MUSIC	54	ART AND ARCHITECTURE	69
DELHI SULTANATE LITERATURE	55	DECCAN SULTANATES	69
VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE	55	AHMADNAGAR SULTANATE	70
Harihara and Bukka (c. 1336 – 1377 CE)	56	Malik Ambar	70
Harihara II (c. 1377 – 1406 CE)	57	Paintings	71
Deva Raya I (c. 1406 – 1422 CE)	57	Monuments	71
Deva Raya II (c. 1425 – 1446 CE)	57	BIJAPUR SULTANATE	71
TULUVA DYNASTY	58	CULTURAL CONTRIBUTIONS	71
Vira Narasimha Raya (c. 1505 – 1509 CE)	58	GOLKONDA SULTANATE	72
Krishna Deva Raya (c. 1509 – 1529 CE)	58	Monuments	73
Achyuta Deva Raya (c. 1529 – 1542 CE)	59	Literature	73
Sada Siva Raya (c. 1542 – 1570 CE)	59	Paintings	73
VIJAYANAGARA KINGDOM ADMINISTRATION	59	BERAR SULTANATE	74
The Ayagar system	60	BIDAR SULTANATE	74
Army and Military Organisation	60	KASHMIR	75
SOCIAL LIFE	61	Shah Mir Dynasty (c. 1339 – 1555 CE)	75
ECONOMIC CONDITION	61	Sultan Shihab-ud-din (c. 1354 – 1373 CE)	75

Sikander Shah (c. 1389 – 1413 CE)	75	Suhrawardi	90
Zain-ul-Abideen (c. 1420 – 1470 CE)	76	Firdausi	90
Chak Dynasty (c. 1555 – 1586 CE)	76	Naqshbandi	90
SHARQI DYNASTY, JAUNPUR	77	The Qadri order	90
Ibrahim Shah (c. 1402 – 1440 CE)	77	Miyan Bayazid Ansari (Pir Roshan)	90
Mahmud Shah (c. 1440 – 1457 CE)	77	Nuruddin Noorani (Wali)	90
Hussain Shah Sharqi (c. 1458 – 1505 CE)	78	BHAKTI SAINTS	90
THE KINGDOM OF BENGAL	78	Adi Sankara	91
ILYAS SHAH DYNASTY	79	Ramanuja (11th – 12th century)	91
HUSSAIN SHAHI DYNASTY	79	Nimabarka (12th century)	92
ASSAM	80	Madhvacharya (12th – 13th century)	92
Ahom dynasty (1228–1826)	81	Ramananda (15th century)	92
ODISHA	81	Kabir (15th – 16th century)	92
GAJAPATI DYNASTY	82	Ravidas (15th – 16th)	93
Kapilendra Deva (c. 1435 – 1466 CE)	82	Dadu Dayal (16th – 17th century)	93
Purushottama Deva (1466 and 1497 CE)	82	Chaitanya Mahaprabhu (15th – 16th century)	93
Prataparudra Deva (c. 1497 – 1540 CE)	82	Vallabhacharya (15th -16th century)	93
Art and Architecture During Gajapati Dynasty	83	Surdas 16th – 17th century)	94
KINGDOM OF MALWA	83	Tulsidas 16th – 17th century)	94
Hoshang Shah (c. 1406 – 1435 CE)	84	SIKHISM	94
Mahmud Khalji (c. 1436 – 1469 CE)	84	GURU NANAK	94
Ghiyas-ud-Din (c. 1469 – 1500 CE)	84	Sikhism - Significance	95
Mahmud Shah II (c. 1510 – 1531 CE)	84	TEN GURUS	96
Baz Bahadur (c. 1551- 1561 CE)	84	Guru Nanak (1469 – 1539)	96
GUJARAT	85	Guru Angad Dev (1504 – 1552)	96
MUZAFFARID DYNASTY	85	Guru Amar Dass (1479 – 1574)	96
Ahmed Shah I (c.1411 – 1441)	85	Guru Ram Dass (1534 – 1581)	96
Mahmud Begarha (c. 1459 – 1511 CE)	86	Guru Arjun Dev (1563 – 1606)	96
MEWAR	86	Guru Hargobind (1595 – 1644)	96
Rana Kumbha (c. 1433 – 1468 CE)	87	Guru Har Rai (1630 – 1661)	96
Rana Sanga (c. 1508 – 1528 CE)	87	Guru Har Kishan (1656 – 1664)	96
SUFI ORDERS	88	Guru Teg Bahadur (1621 – 1675)	97
IMPORTANT TERMS	89	Guru Govind Singh (1666 – 1708)	97
Chishti	90	MUGHALS	97
		BABUR (1526-1530)	97

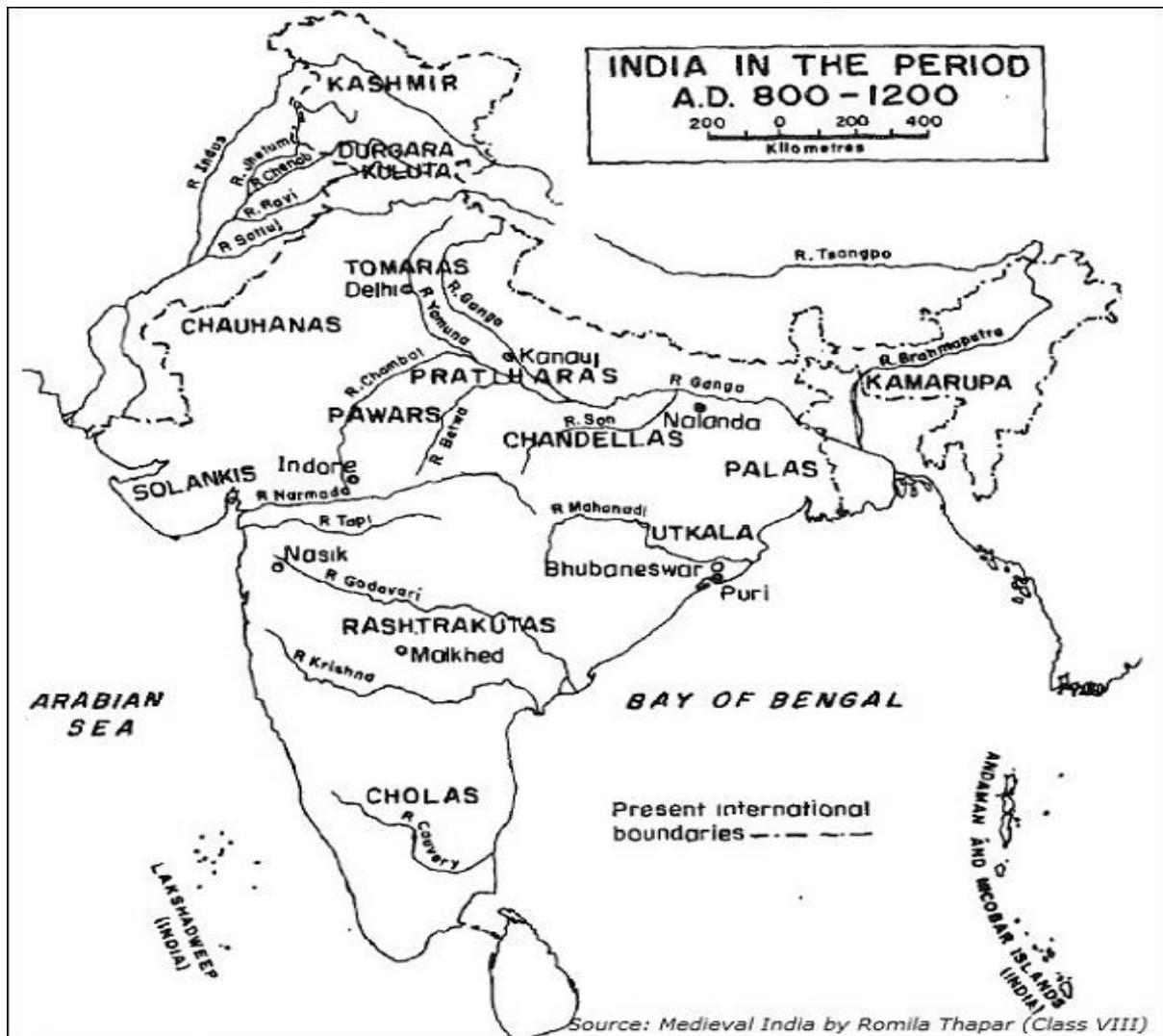
RANA SANGHA & BABUR	97	ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL LIFE UNDER THE MUGHALS	119
HUMAYUN (1530-1540, 1555-1556)	98	GROWTH OF TRADE	119
SHERSHAH (INTERREGNUM)	99	PAINTINGS	120
AKBAR (1556-1605 AD)	101	LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE	121
EARLY EXPANSION OF THE EMPIRE (C. 1560- 1576 CE)	102	ADMINISTRATIVE DEPARTMENTS	121
Conquest of Gwalior, Malwa and Gondwana	102	LATER MUGHALS	122
Conquest of Rajasthan	102	Bahadur Shah I/Shah Alam/Muazzam (c. 1707 – 1712 CE)	123
Conquest of Gujarat, Bihar and Bengal	103	Jahandar Shah (c. 1712 – 1713 CE)	123
REBELLIONS AND FURTHER EXPANSION OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE	104	Ijarah system (revenue farming)	124
ART AND ARCHITECTURE	105	Farrukh Siyar (c. 1713 – 1719 CE)	124
ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEM OF AKBAR	106	Rafi-us-Darajat (c. 1719 CE)	124
Organisation of Government	106	Rafi-us-Daula (c. 1719 CE)	124
Central Administration	106	Muhammad Shah (Rangeela)/Roshan	125
Provincial Administration	107	Akhtar (c. 1719 – 1748 CE)	125
Land Revenue Administration	109	Invasion of Nadir Shah (c. 1739 CE)	125
Mansabdari System	109	Ahmad Shah (c. 1748 – 1754 CE)	126
The Jagirdari System	110	Alamgir II (c. 1754 – 1759 CE)	126
Religious Policy under Akbar	111	Ali Gauhar/Shah Alam II (c. 1759 – 1806 CE)	126
Akbar's Navratnas	112	Akbar II (C. 1806 – 1837 CE)	126
JAHANGIR (1605-1627 AD)	113	Bahadur Shah II/Zafar (c. 1837 – 1857 CE)	126
Contribution to art and culture	115	THE MARATHAS	127
SHAH JAHAN (1628-1658 AD)	115	SHIVAJI (1627-1680)	127
Deccan Policy	115	Shivaji's Administration	128
Art and Architecture	116	Central Administration	129
AURANGZEB (1658-1707 AD)	117	Provincial Administration	129
Conquest of Deccan	117	Army	129
		Revenue	130
		Successors of Shivaji	130
		Shambhaji (1680-1689)	130
		Rajaram (1689-1700)	131
		Tarabai (1700-1707)	131
		Shahu (1707-1749)	131

MEDIEVAL INDIA - HISTORY, ART & CULTURE

(SPECIAL EDITION FOR PRELIMS 2024)

→ STATE FORMATION UNDER THE RAJPUTS

- The period **after the 7th century A.D.** was characterized by the growth of ruling clans especially in Rajasthan and these have been categorized as Rajput.
- Several theories have been propounded by scholars regarding the origin of the Rajputs. Some consider them to be of **foreign stock while others regard them as belonging to the Kshatriya Varna**. Bardic traditions refer to them as having originated from agnikunda on Mt. Abu.



- Later heroic poems or traditions suggest that the category Rajput comprised of 36 clans which initially may have been 12 or 24.
- The formation of ruling lineages is regarded as a ‘process’ which emerged and was strengthened by the **alleged ascription of Kshatriya status by these ruling clans**.
- The claims were not merely a manifestation of their desire to trace their pedigree but they represented the means to **justify their position as the ruling authority**.
- The increase in agricultural settlements with the growth of agricultural economy is borne out by the epigraphic and archaeological testimony. The inscriptional evidence from Western and Central India refers to the subjugation of **Sabaras, Bhillas and Pulindas** by the Rajput clans.
- The Rajput ruling lineages gained at the **expense of the tribal groups**.
- The improved agricultural techniques encouraged settlement of new territories and the gradual transformation from “**tribalism**” to **state polity**.
- An important feature of this period was the process of **social mobility within Varna hierarchy**. **Medas and Hunas exemplify this process since they acquired ‘Rajput’ rank** from a tribal position.
- The Pratiharas belonged to the Gurjara clan and became an important ruling power in the 8th century A.D. They were originally pastoralists and agriculturists.
- The Pratiharas of Mandor (837 A.D.) are said to have descended from **Kshatriya wife of a Brahmana thus laying claim to Brahma-kshatra status**.
- **Guhilas of Mewar** (10th to 11th century A.D.) are also referred to as possessing Brahma-kshatra status.
- **Cahamanas (Chauhans) of Sakambhari (1169 A.D.)** are also alleged to be Brahma-kshatra.
- Regarding their ancestry it is traced to the **mythological figures** like Maharaja Karna, Lakshmana, Vedic gods like Indra, Vishnu, Solar race and Ikshvakuks of Krta age.
- It seems that **Brahma- kshatra status was a device used** in the late period to further legitimise the new pure Kshatriya position as having been obtained from an even more pure and high status of Brahman. Thus the genealogies were composed in the period of transformation from subservient to sovereign power.
- These genealogies were exaggeration although they did contain some **elements of genuinity**. The Gurjaras of Gujarat were feudatories of the Valabhi king. The early Guhilas held feudatory positions (feudatories of Mauryas and Pratiharas). The Cahamana genealogy refers to the term Samanta which proves that they were feudatories of Gurjara Pratiharas and the term naradeva or nrpa (king) indicates their transformation to autonomous status.
- The above examples illustrate how the **Rajputisation process (formation of ruling lineages, emergence of feudatories) took place within the prevailing graded state structure**.

IMPORTANT CHARACTERISTICS

- The **distribution of land among the Rajput clans** which led to the emergence of large estates.
- The grouping of **villages into blocks** comprising of six or multiples of six or eighty four villages led to the **emergence of territorial and administrative units**.
- The **forts built in this period were an expression of political authority** of the ruling clans and these forts drew sustenance from the contiguous landholdings and formed a part of the territorial system of Rajput polity.

- **Marriage alliances** among the various Rajput clans also had their impact in the political sphere.
- The **inter-clan marriage networks were confined to Rajputs i.e. ruling elites**. Social groups who acquired power in this period and emerged as ruling elites also legitimised their position socially and politically by entering into marriage alliances with established Rajput lineages and through kshatriyaisation.
- It appears that **by the 13th century** the Rajputra category indicated not only the political position but it became **hereditary**. There was growth and expansion of Rajput clan network. The term Rajputra encompassed a **wide category from son of a king to a small landholder**.
- **Epithets like Rajaputra, Rauta, Ranaka became more prevalent after 12th century** than samanta and mahasamanta. The terms Rajputra, Ranaka, etc. are sometimes mentioned along with the appellations like samanta, mahamandelesvara, etc.
- Rauta, Ranaka, titles are also found in the inscriptions of many clans who were probably seeking a place in the socio-political structure which proves that Rajput socio-political system was an assimilative and flexible structure.
- The **military prowess was an important factor** which helped these clans in becoming ruling powers. The Rajput ruling clans got proliferated either through segmentation(an important clan got subdivided into sub-clan) or through assimilation with the local elements.

LAND ASSIGNMENTS

- The land assignments were an **important feature of the polity under the Pratiharas** and their feudatories. Land was **bestowed upon the Brahmins and temples by the Pratihara kings**. These grants were virtually held in perpetuity.
- However, these grants **do not clarify the exact nature of economic and administrative privileges**. These administrative measures (issuance of land grants) led to the **emergence of landed intermediaries between the ruling group and the peasants**.
- **Religious endowments were commonly prevalent** in the territories of feudatories of Pratiharas.
- The **religious grantees were given the responsibility of maintaining law and order and collection of revenue**.
- In 890 A.D. Pratihara ruler **Bhoja I assigned land to a Kalachuri ruler** for his meritorious military service. Pratihara kings also gave **land grants to senior officials**.
- The **grant issued by the Gurjara feudatory of the Pratiharas** refers to the territory under his control as **Svabhog-avapta-vamsapotakabhoga**. He was a member of ruling family and had been granted the territory by the Pratihara king but he further sub-allotted it with administrative rights.
- However, it seems that Pratiharas **issued very few secular grants**.
- An important feature of administrative system under Pratiharas and their feudatories was the practice of **subinfeudation**. The **religious grantees made endowments to others by transferring portions of their assignments**.
- **Grants were also bestowed upon the mathas and teachers** by the members of the ruling clans or other feudatories who could make sub-grants even without the approval of the overlord.
- There is a reference to a land grant made by a high Pratihara functionary to a temple which was recommended by a Cahamana feudatory. The charter of this grant contained the signature of the two royal officials. This shows the importance of royal sanction in the administrative

system. However it seems that royal and official sanction was not always sought while making grants.

ADMINISTRATION

- A unique feature of Pratihara administrative system was the **absence of a large centralised bureaucratic machinery**.
- The category of **central officials** mentioned in the **grants** are called **Niyuktas**.
- The territories held by the **feudatories and Mahasamantas** were administered by them through their sub-feudatories.
- Though the Pratiharas might have exercised control over their feudatories but it seems that the **polity was dominated by Samanta/feudatory system**.
- The Pratihara kings used appellations viz. **Parmeshwara, Mahrajadhiraja** etc. These titles point to the superiority of the king over all other chiefs and princes who had accepted his suzerainty.
- From the inscriptions we come to know that **Madhava (in the period of the Pratihara king Mahendrapal II)** who was a **governor (Tantrapal)** and **chief commander (Mahadandanayaka)** was also referred to as **Mahasamanta**.
- **Undabhata** who held the position of **governor of town (Mahapratihara)** was also called **Mahasamantadhipati (head of feudatories)**. It seems that the officials were bestowed with appellations having feudal connotation.
- The **feudatories** of Pratiharas (Cahamana, Chalukyas, Guhilot and Kalachuri) provided military assistance to their suzerain. The relationship was based on the idea of loyalty and allegiance. The feudatories **acknowledged their suzerain in the grants**.
- The Pratiharas did not have several seats of power and kept their base mainly at Kannauj.
- They did not generally make non-religious grants. However in 1036 A.D. the last ruler of this dynasty made a non-sectarian grant to a non-Brahmin.
- Villages under the Gurjara Pratiharas were divided into groups of **12 and 84**. This is mentioned in the inscription of 9th century A.D. of a Chalukya feudatory of Pratiharas. It seems that later the territories were distributed among the leaders of the clans in units of 12 villages or their multiples.

POST GURJARA-PRATIHARA

- The Gurjara Pratihara empire declined in the later half of the 10th century A.D.
- The **Gahadavalas** and **Kalachuris** controlled the territories in UP.
- The **eastern portion of Central India** was being ruled by **Kalachuris of Tripuri (M.P.)** and **Chandelas of Jejakabhukti (Bundelkhand)**.
- Later the Kalachuris were divided into 3 groups: 1) of Tripuri, 2) of Ratanpura, 3) of Gorakhpur
- Territories in Rajasthan, Gujarat and Malwa were placed under various Rajput ruling clans viz. **Cahamanas** who got partitioned into 5 groups: 1) Broach, 2) Javalipura (mid 12th century), 3) Sakambhari (Raj.), 4) Naddula (Raj.), and 5) Ranthambhor
- The **important ruling clans** of Cahamanas in the 12th – 13th century A.D. were those of **Broach and Ranthambhor**.
- The **Guhilas took control of Mewar (Chittor, Udaipur)** in the 13th century.
- The **Tomars** were in possession of **Ajmer and Delhi**.
- **Paramaras held Malwa and Abu**.

IMPORTANT TEXTS

- **Agni Puran** (10th to 11th century A.D.) deriving from **Kamandaka NitiSara** (8th century A.D.) advises the Samantas “to assuage public feeling to help their overlord in war, to mobilise his (the overlord’s) allies and auxiliaries and to distinguish friends from enemies. They are further asked to protect the people (janatranam) like a fort – a function that devolved on them from their sovereign.
- On the other hand the **king is advised to be on his guard against the vassals**, whose revolt is considered to be an external danger in contrast to the internal danger caused by the disaffection of princes, ministers and other high functionaries” (R. S. Sharma, Indian Feudalism).
- The **Agnipuran therefore directs the king to annihilate the rebellious feudatories**.
- The **Lekhapaddhati** which discusses the situation in Gujarat in the 12th – 13th century is a legal text which **refers to the duties of the feudatories**. However, the inscriptions do not clearly state the responsibilities of the feudatories.
- The **Pattalas or charters** mentioned in the Lekhapaddhati refer to the king and his Mahamatyas.
- **Manasollasa a text of 12th century A.D.** suggests that the king should give gifts viz. land to feudatories (Samantamanyakas) and the ministers viz. Mantrins, Amatyas and Sacivas. It suggests that the endowment should be made to servants (Bhrtyas) and kinsmen (Bandhavas). Different types of gifts are mentioned viz. villages, mines etc.
- The documents relating to revenue collection at village level (grama-pattakas) in Gujarat refer to the Rajputras who sub-assigned their lands to merchants for revenue appropriation (Lekhapaddhati).
- The **Prabandhchintamani of Merutunga** describes the period of Paramara Bhoj and Chalukya Bhim. Merutunga points out, “the lord of the country gives away a village, the lord of the village a field, and the lord of the field some vegetables; every contented person gives away his property”.
- The grantees were given charters by the king for revenue appropriation and they became the village lords.
- **Manasara (12th century A.D. text)** places the king into a graded structure comprising of 9 categories: Cakravartin, Maharaja (or Adhiraja), Mahendra (Narendra), Parsnika, Pattadhara, Mandalesa etc.
- **Aparajitaprccha of Bhatt Bhuvandev (12th century A.D.)** describes nine types of rulers: Mahipati, Raja, Naradhipa, Mahamandaleswar, Mandalika, Mahasamanta, Samanta etc. The grants specifically made to priests and temples are more than the specific secular grants.

→ THE CHAHAMANAS OR CHAUHANS OF AJMER

- The Chahamanas/Chauhans of Sambhar ruled between the **7th and 11th centuries CE**, in Rajasthan and its adjoining regions.
- They had their capital at **Shakambhari (modern Sambhar near Jaipur)**.
- Later, the capital was shifted to Ajmer, so they are also known as **Chahamanas of Ajmer**. They were feudatories of the Pratiharas and later declared independence during the rule of **king Simharaja**.

CHAHAMANA RULERS

Simharaja (c. 944 – 971 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder of the Chauhan dynasty
Vigraharaja II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Invaded Gujarat and captured Chittor
Ajayaraja II (c. 1110 – 1135 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defeated the Paramars of Malwa and captured their city, Ujjaini. • Founder of the city Ajayameru (Ajmer).
Vigraharaja IV/Visaldev (c. 1150 – 1164 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defeated Tomaras of Delhi in c. 1151 CE but let them rule there as feudatories. He expanded his empire from the Siwaliks in the north to Udaipur in the south. • He shifted the capital to Ajmer. • He fought with the Paramars of Malwa during the reign of the famous king Bhoja. • He wrote the famous play Harikeli Nataka. • The structure that was later converted into the Adhai-Din-Ka-Jhopra was constructed during his reign.
Prithviraj III (c. 1177 – 1192 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He is known as Prithviraj Chauhan/Rai Pithora and is the most famous of all the Chauhans. • He occupied the throne at the tender age of 11 (after his father's death), but controlled administration at the age of 16. • His famous expedition in Bundelkhand against the Chandella ruler led to the loss of lives of famous Chandella warriors – Alha and Udal. • In the First Battle of Tarain (c. 1191 CE), he defeated Mohammad Ghori. However, in the Second Battle of Tarain (c. 1192 CE) he was killed. This battle is considered to be the landmark event in the Islamic conquest of India. • Prithviraj Raso and Prithviraj Vijaya are the two poems that were written by his court poets.

Decline

- After conquering Ajmer and Delhi, Mohammad Ghori appointed the young son of Prithviraj Chauhan, **Govinda** as his vassal chief in Ajmer. **Hari-raja, brother of Prithviraj expelled Govinda** for accepting Muslim rule.
- **Govinda established the Chahamana branch of Ranastambhapura (Ranthambore)**. Hari-raja regained Ajmer and followed a hostile policy towards the conquerors of Delhi.
- Qutub-ud-din Aibak defeated Hari-raja and conquered Ajmer.
- In c. 1301 CE, Alauddin Khilji captured Ranthambore and uprooted the last stronghold of Chauhan power.

'SUCCEED IN' UPSC EXAMINATION 2025

through

ACHIEVE 'RANK' IN UPSC

'COMPLETE REVISION AND PRACTICE PROGRAM'

Suitable for all students:

- ✓ Completed GS 'Foundation' Coaching but still struggling with lack of confidence
 - ✓ Doing self-study but are clueless about right approach
 - ✓ College students not having regular studies
 - ✓ Working professionals having lack of time for regular studies

BASED ON: DAILY, WEEKLY AND MONTHLY TIMETABLE

Covers all stages- Preliminary, Main Examination and Interview

1.	Daily guided revision by UPSC expert: Monday to Friday revision classes (2 hours/day).
2.	Revision Material: Daily Class Handouts and Monthly 'ACHIEVE' Revision Books
3.	Preliminary Examination: Revision classes comprise of - General Studies and CSAT.
4.	Main Examination: Revision classes comprise of - Essay Paper, General Studies Papers- 1,2,3 and 4.
5.	Planned Completion: Monthly timetable based coverage of subjects
6.	Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs): Weekly with Answer Keys and explanations; Monthly Full Length Tests (FLTs)
7.	General Studies Main Answers: Writing practice with discussions in class and Tests
8.	Essay Paper: Writing Practice with discussions in class and Tests
9.	Case studies: Writing Practice with discussions in class and Tests
10.	Current Affairs: Monthly Current Affairs Magazine; ; Monthly Current Affairs Quiz; Current affairs revision classes
11.	Performance Improvement: One to one discussion; performance tracker- daily, weekly and monthly.
12.	Prelims build up: 'Thematic' and complete 'General Studies' FLTs
13.	Main examination build up: Fast revision classes, Topic tests, 'General Studies' FLTs, Essay Paper Test.
14.	Sessions by Officers
15.	Interview Guidance

To know more about: ACHIEVE Program 2025, Detailed Timetable, and the UPSC Expert (visit the website: www.shieldias.in; Contact: 7037272363)

→ CHANDELLAS OF BUNDELKHAND

- The Chandellas of Bundelkhand are supposed to be the **descendants of Chandratreya, mythical ancestor born of the moon**.
- They were feudatories of Gurjara-Pratiharas of Kannauj and fought with the Pratiharas, the Palas and the Kalachuris of Chedi (who bordered the Chandellas to the south).
- The **Nagara style of temple architecture reached its peak at Khajuraho** during the reign of Chandellas.

CHANDELLA RULERS

Nannuka (c. 831 – 845 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Founder of the Chandella dynasty. Established its capital at Khajuraho.
Jayashakti (c. 865 – 885 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Mahoba inscription mentions that Chandella was named 'Jejakabhukti' after Jayashakti.
Shri Harsha (c. 905 – 925 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Harsha played a significant role in restoring the power of Mahipala (Pratihara king) after the Rashtrakuta invasion.
Yashovarman (c. 925 – 950 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yashovarman became practically independent although the Pratihara suzerainty continued. He built the famous Lakshmana temple at its capital Khajuraho.
Dhanga Deva (c. 950 – 999 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He adopted the title of 'Maharajadhiraja'. During his rule, the Vishvanatha temple at Khajuraho was built.
Vidyadhara (c. 1003 – 1035 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Ghaznavid ruler, Mahmud of Ghazni invaded the kingdom and Vidyadhara had to pay tribute to him. The Muslim invasions weakened the Chandella empire and the Kalachuri king Gangeya Deva taking advantage of the situation captured the eastern parts of the kingdom. During his reign, the Kandariya Mahadeva temple was built.
Vijayapala (c. 1035 – 1050 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vijayapala defeated Gangeya Deva. During his reign, the Chandella power started to decline due to the constant conflicts between Chandellas and its neighbours, the Paramaras of Malwa and the Kalachuris of Tripuri. Also, the Chandella territory was raided by Ghaznavids and Ghurids which further aided its decline.
Paramardi Deva (c. 1165 – 1203 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Around 1183 CE, the Chahaman ruler Prithviraj Chauhan attacked the empire and sacked Mahoba. King Paramardi Deva took refuge in the Kalanjara fort and the Chandella army led by Alha and Udal and others suffered defeat at the hands of the Chahamanas.

→ PARAMARAS OF MALWA

- The Paramaras (slayer of enemies) ruled at Malwa, with its capital at **Dhara** (Madhya Pradesh). The earliest known Paramara king was **Upendra**.
- As per the **Harsola copper plate inscriptions** by the Paramara king, **Siyaka II**, the Paramaras were feudatories of **Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta** and established themselves in the 10th century CE.
- The Paramaras were involved in fights with their neighbouring kingdoms like the Chalukyas of Gujarat, the Chalukyas of Kalyani, the Kalachuris of Tripuri, etc.
- It is believed that due to frequent attacks on its capital city Dhara, the later Paramara rulers had to shift their capital to **Mandapa-Durga (Mandu)**.
- The Paramaras mostly followed **Shaivism** and also patronised **Jainism**.

PARAMARA RULERS

Upendra (around the first quarter of the 9th century CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After the victorious military expedition in Malwa, the Rashtrakuta king Govinda III made Upendra the ruler of the Deccan. • He is the founder of Malwa's Paramara dynasty.
Siyaka II (c. 948 – 972 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He established the Paramaras as an independent power. He defeated the Rashtrakuta king Khottiga and also sacked the Rashtrakuta capital Manyakheta.
Munja/Utpala/Vakpatiraja II(c. 972 – 990 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He expanded his kingdom with several military conquests. He sacked Tripuri, capital of Kalachuris, defeated Hunas, conquered regions of the Chahamanas. He also invaded the Chalukyan kingdom of Anahilapataka and Lata. • He was defeated by Tailapa II, the western Chalukyan king and lost his southern territories (beyond the Narmada river) to the Chalukyas.
Sindhuraja (c. 990 – 1010 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Munja's brother, who defeated the Chalukyan king and recovered the regions lost to Tailapa II. • He also achieved military success against a Huna chief. • His biography, Nava-Sahasanka-Charita, was written by Padmagupta, his court poet.
Bhoja (c.1010 – 1055 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bhoja is the most popular ruler of the Paramara dynasty. He extended his empire from Chittor in the north to upper Konkan in the south and from the Sabarmati river in the west to Vidisha in the east. • Bhoja formed an alliance with Rajendra Chola and Gangeya Deva Kalachuri against the Chalukyan king of Kalyani, Jayasimha II. • Bhoja assumed the title of Parameshvara Parama Bhattacharya which is identical to the title of Parama Deva. • He could not extend his kingdom eastwards as he met strong resistance from Vidyadhara, the Chandella king. However, he was

	<p>able to establish his influence among feudatories of the Chandella empire, the Kachchapaghatas of Dubkund.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is believed that Bhoja supported the Hindu-Shahi ruler Anandapala in his fight against the Ghaznavids. He was also part of the Hindu alliance that overthrew Mahmud governors from Thanesar, Hansi and other adjoining areas (around 1043 CE). He was a polymath and has written about grammar, poetry, chemistry, yoga, etc. He built a temple of Sarasvati in Dhara and established a centre of Sanskrit learning. He founded the city of Bhojpur, built the Bhojeshwar temple and three dams in that region.
Lakshmadeva (c. 1086 – 1094 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As per Nagpur Prashasti inscription of c. 1105 CE, Lakshmadeva achieved a number of military successes.

- The last known Paramara king, **Mahalakadeva** was killed by the army of Ala-ud-din Khilji of Delhi in c. 1305 CE, although there are evidences that mention that the Paramara rule continued even after the death of Mahalakadeva until c. 1310 CE (at least in the northeastern part of Malwa).
- A later inscription mentions that the area had been conquered by the Delhi Sultanate by c. 1338 CE.

→ CHALUKYAS OF GUJARAT/SOLANKI RAJPUTS

- The **Chalukyas of Gujarat** are different from the Chalukyas of Badami, Vengi and Kalyani. They exercised their power in Gujarat and Kathiawar between c. 950 – 1300 CE. The dynasty had three main branches:
1. The oldest branch ruled central India's **Mattamayura region**.
 2. Another branch ruled **Lata (south Gujarat)** and its important city was Bhrigukachchha (**Broach**). This branch was founded by Barappa.
 3. **Mulraja I** founded the other branch, with its capital at **Anahilapataka (modern Pattan)**.

CHALUKYAS RULERS

Mulraja I (c. 940 – 995 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was a follower of Shaivism and also patronized Jainism. He built the Mulavasatika temple for Digambaras and the Mulanatha-Jinadeva temple for the Shvetambaras.
Bhima I (c. 1021 – 1064 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grandson of Mulraja I. He built the Sun temple of Modhera and his queen Udaymati built the Rani-ki vav (Queen's step well) in his memory, which is listed in the UNESCO's World Heritage Site list. In c. 1031 CE, Vimalsha, minister of Bhima I, built Vimal Vasahi temple dedicated to Jain lord Rishaba. It is one of the five famous Dilwara temples.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mahmud of Ghazni attacked Gujarat and plundered Somnath during Bhima I's reign.
Karan (c. 1065 – 1091 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He defeated a Bhil chieftain and founded Karnavati (present-day Ahmedabad).
Jaya Simha Siddharaja (c. 1092 – 1142 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He expanded the kingdom and included Saurashtra and Kutch in his empire. Also conquered Malwa. The Rudra Mahakala temple at Siddhapur (Patan) was built during his reign.
Kumarapala (c. 1177 – 1240 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During his reign, the prosperity of Gujarat reached its peak. Rebuilt the Somnath temple.
Bhima II (c. 1177 – 1240 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He successfully resisted the invasions of Mohammad Ghori at the battle of Kayadara. In c. 1195, Mohammad Ghori's deputy, Aibak invaded again but Bhima II defeated him and adopted the title of Abhinav Siddharaj. After c. 1243 CE, the Chalukyas of Gujarat lost to the Hindu Vaghela dynasty of Dholka (feudatories of Solankis).

- In c. 1297, Alau-din-Khilji conquered Gujarat.

→ TOMARAS

- They were **feudatories of the Pratiharas** and ruled the Haryana territory with its capital at Dellika (Delhi).
- They were one among the 36 Rajput clans and medieval bardic literature names the dynasty as “Tuar”.
- A **13th century Palam Baoli (step well) inscription** mentions that the land of Hariyanaka was first enjoyed by the Tomaras, then by the Chauhans and thereafter by the Shakas (i.e, Delhi Sultans).
- Anangapala Tomara (11th Century)** was the famous king of the Tomara dynasty who established Delhi. He issued the coins featuring **the horse man and bull** and also bore the title “**Shri Samanta Deva**”.
- The earliest surviving waterworks were constructed during the Tomara reign.
- Anangapala II** was the founder of the **citadel of Lal Kot in the Mehrauli area** and also built **Anang Tal (tank)**.
- The famous **Suraj Kund reservoir at Faridabad, Haryana** was commissioned by a Tomara king named **Surajpala**.

→ GAHADAVALAS OF KANNAUJ

- The Gahadavalas were Suryavanshi Kshatriyas and ruled Kannauj for over a hundred years.

- **Chandradeva** was the founder of the Gahadavala dynasty of Kannauj (around c. 1090 CE). They slowly threw the Palas out of Bihar and made **Banaras their second capital city**.

GAHADAVALAS RULERS

Govindachandra (c. 1114 – 1154 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grandson of Chandradeva, who defeated the Ghaznavids and during his reign, Kannauj reached unprecedented glory. • His empire included the present-day Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. • Govindachandra patronised both Hinduism as well as Buddhism.
Jaichandra (c. 1170 – 1194 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The last great ruler of the Gahadavala dynasty. During his rule, Prithviraj Chauhan (Ajmer) annexed Delhi. • Jaichandra sought help from Muslims of the north to invade the Chauhans of Ajmer-Delhi. • He was defeated by king Lakshmansena of Bengal. • After the fall of Delhi (around 1194 CE), the city of Kannauj was attacked by Mohammad of Ghori. • It is believed that Jaichandra was defeated in the battle of Chanawar and was drowned in the Ganga. His kingdom was conquered by the army of Ghori. • It is believed that the survivors of the Gahadavala dynasty fled west to Rajasthan (Marwar desert region) where they established themselves as rulers in the 13th century. They founded the Rathore clan and ruled Marwar or Jodhpur.

→ KINGDOM OF KASHMIR AND NORTH-WEST

- The chronicle **Rajatarangini** ('the river of kings') written in Sanskrit by **Kalhana** (a Kashmiri Brahmin) gives a detailed historical account of Kashmir and north-west India.
- This earliest historical source consists of 7826 verses, which are divided into eight books called **Tarangas (waves)**.

KARKOTA DYNASTY

- The Karkota dynasty established their power in **Kashmir (early 7th century)** and it emerged as a power in central Asia and northern India.
- **Durlabh Vardhana** was the founder of the Karkota dynasty. The Karkota rulers were Hindus and built spectacular **Hindu temples at Parihaspur (capital)**.
- They also patronised Buddhism as some stupas, chaityas and viharas have been found in the ruins of their capital.

KARKOTA RULERS

Durlabh Vardhana (c. 598 – 634 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During his rule, Hsuan Tsang, a Chinese pilgrim, visited Kashmir.
Lalitaditya/Muktapida (c. 697 – 733 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most successful king of the Karkota dynasty as he extended his empire beyond the mountains. He ably defeated the Turks,

	<p>Tibetans, Kambojas, etc. (Some historians believe that Kalhana exaggerated the triumphs of Lalitaditya).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He built the famous Martand (sun) temple in Anantnag district and it is the oldest sun temple in India. • He also defeated king Yashovarman of Kannauj.
Jayapida (c. 745 – 776 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He led a three year long military expedition against the eastern rulers and defeated five chieftains of Gauda and ruler of Kannauj. • He imposed heavy taxes and treated his subjects badly.

- **Avanti Varman ended the rule of the Karkota dynasty** and established the **Utpala dynasty, around 855 CE**.

UTPALA DYNASTY

- The dynasty was founded by Avanti Varman and it ruled Kashmir from the **8th to the 10th century**.
- The **tantrins** (a body of foot soldiers), **ekangas** (a body of royal bodyguards) and the **damaras** (landed chiefs) played a vital role in the political history of medieval times.
- Kalhana's Rajatarangini mentions **three women rulers**, namely **Yashovati** (Gonanda dynasty), **Suganda** (Utpala dynasty) and **Didda** (Yashaskara dynasty).

Avanti Varman (c. 855 – 883 CE)

- Founded the Utpala dynasty. He exercised **control over damaras, rural aristocrats** who were the cause of internal disputes. He took measures to stabilise the state.
- He undertook **innovative works in the field of irrigation**. For example, he took appropriate steps to control and **prevent flood waters from Wular (Mahapadma)** entering the fields.
- He founded the cities of **Avantipur and Suyapur**. During his rule, temples (**both Shiva and Vishnu**) and **Buddhist monasteries** were built e.g., **Avantiswara and Avantiswami temples**.

Sankara Varman (c. 883 – 902 CE):

- Son and successor of Avanti Varman who led military expeditions in Punjab and Gujarat.
- However, his military expeditions led to the drain of treasury wealth and in order to make up for the losses, he levied heavy taxes on his subjects.

YASHASKARA DYNASTY

Queen Didda (c. 958 – 1003 CE)

- She was the **granddaughter of Bhima Shahi, one of the Hindu Shahis of Kabul**, daughter of Simharaja of **Lohara (region around Pir Panjal range)** and wife of king **Kshemagupta**.
- Her royal career is mentioned in the **sixth taranga of the Rajatarangini**.
- She ruled first as a regent for her son and various grandsons and thereafter as the sole ruler in her own right. She had considerable influence in the political affairs of the state even before becoming the regent.

- The coins bearing the name of **Kshemagupta and Didda** have been found. However, Kalhana describes her as a merciless woman and explains in detail how ruthlessly she killed her son and three grandsons in order to ascend the throne.
- She founded the towns of **Siddapura and Kankanapura**.
- Didda placed **Sangramaraja, the son of her brother**, on the throne, thereby shifting the royal succession from the Yashaskaras to her natal family and thus the Lohara dynasty emerged as a ruling power in Kashmir.

HINDU SHAHI DYNASTY

- The Turkish Shahiya dynasty ruled over **Kabul (eastern Afghanistan) and Gandhara (northern Pakistan and Kashmir)** after the fall of the Kushan empire (3rd – 7th century CE).
- The Shahiya dynasty was split into two eras – the **Budhhist Shahis** and the **Hindu Shahis**. A Brahmana minister of **king Lagaturman, Kallar** dethroned the Shahiya king (in the second half of the 9th century CE) and became the founder of the Shahi dynasty.
- The Shahis ruled the Buddhist and Hindu populations and thus patronised multiple faiths.

HINDU SHAHI KINGS

Kallar (c. 890 – 895 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Rajataringini mentions him as “Lallyashahi”. Around 870 CE, he had to shift his capital to Udabhanda from Kabul (present day Und village, Rawalpindi, Pakistan) after suffering defeat from the Arabs, Sarrarid Yaqui Ibn.
Jayapala (c. 964 – 1001 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He defended his empire from the Turkish rulers of Ghazni and is celebrated as a hero for his struggles. Battle of Peshawar and First Battle of Waihind (1001-02 AD)
Anandapala (c. 1001 – 1010 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The son and successor of Jayapala who was a great warrior. During the “Battle of Chach” (Second battle of Waihind) between Anandapala and Mahmud Ghazni, huge losses were incurred on the Ghaznavids. However, Anandapala lost the battle and his kingdom suffered huge financial and territorial losses. Some historians compare him with king Porus, who strongly opposed Alexander.
Trilochanpala (c. 1010 – 1022 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He conquered the region of Shivalik hills, which was earlier under the rule of the Rai of Sharwa, thereby expanding his kingdom from the Indus river to the upper Gangetic valley. He rebelled against the Ghaznavids – Sultan Mahmud. He was assassinated by some of his own mutinous troops in 1022 CE. It is believed that Rai of Sharwa had a role in his assassination.
Bheempala (c. 1022 – 1026 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was described by famous historian Utbi as the “fearless” owing to his great courage and strength. It is said that in the “battle of Nandana” he seriously injured the commander – Muhammad bin Ibrahim of the Ghaznavid army. He was the last “Shahi” emperor. In the early 12th century, the kingdom was destroyed by Mahmud of Ghazni.

→ RAJPUT ARCHITECTURE

- One of the most mesmerizing aspects of Rajput architecture has been the opulent palaces and fortifying forts.

HILL FORTS

- The Hill Forts are a great reflection of Rajput architecture. The forts at **Chittor, Amer, Ranthambore, Jaisalmer, Gagron, and Kumbhalgarh** are a part of the UNESCO World Heritage Sites. All these are built on hills with magnificent towers and secure walls.
- The **Chittorgarh Fort** is one of the largest in India and was the capital of Mewar.
- The **Jaisalmer Fort** is a ‘living fort’, with some of the city’s population still residing within its walls. Built by Rajput king Jaisal the huge yellow sandstone fort is also known as the **Golden Fort or Sonar Qila**.
- The **Ranthambore Fort** lies within the Ranthambore National Park. It was held by Chauhans or the Chahamanas until the Delhi Sultanate took it over.
- The **Amber Fort** a few kilometers from Jaipur was built by Raja Man Singh. These forts are sprawling structures that house temples, palaces, halls, and exquisite interiors.
- Some of the forts include the Jaigarh Fort, Mehrangarh Fort built by Raja Jodha, Junagarh Fort, Lohagarh Fort, Alwar Fort, Bhangarh Fort to name a few.

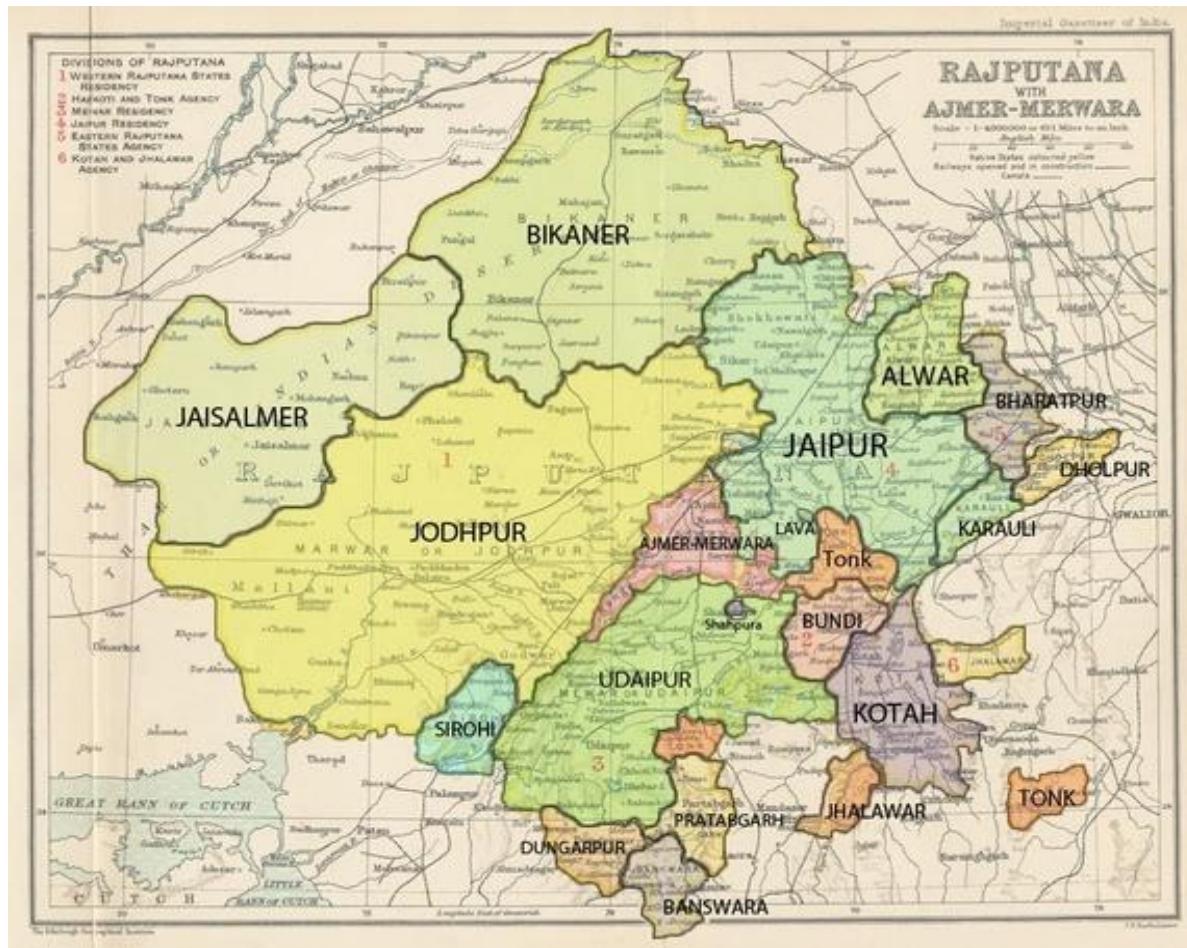
PALACES

- The **Amber Palace** is one of the most beautiful palaces in Jaipur. Located within the Amber Fort, the palace has six different entrances and courtyards.
- **Jal Mahal** situated in the middle of Man Sagar Lake. Built by Maharaja Jai Singh II, the palace is five-storied sandstone with hallways, chhatris, and magnificent paintings.
- The **Vinay Vilas Mahal in Alwar** was built by Maharaja Vinay Singh.
- The **Lalgarh Palace in Bikaner** is an elegant testimony to the Indo-Saracenic architectural style.
- The **Umaid Bhawan Palace in Jodhpur** was built by Maharaja Umaid Singh.
- City Palace, Lake Palace, Monsoon Palace, etc. in Udaipur.

RAJPUT FEATURES

- There are a few architectural nuances that are special to Rajput buildings and structures. The influence of Mughal architecture or perhaps the **integration of Islamic and Hindu architecture is best seen in Rajput structures**
- **Havelis with pretty and intricate frescos and courtyards** were trademark styles. Built-in the **Shekhawati** (Sikar, Jhunjhunu) and **Marwar** (Jodhpur region) areas.
- **Jharokhas**, the overhanging balconies which acted like screens are one of the most prominent architectural elements. The Rajput women were cognizant of purdah or keeping their distance from men. The screens allowed them to watch the proceedings without invading their privacy.
- Similarly, **chhatris or pavilions that are dome-shaped** were built on the cemeteries as **cenotaph** memorials. Some of the excellent cenotaphs are Bada Bagh in Jaisalmer, Ahar Cenotaphs, Jaswant Thada in Jodhpur, and more.
- Another significant feature of the Rajput architecture is its step wells.

RAJPUT PAINTINGS



MEWAR SCHOOL

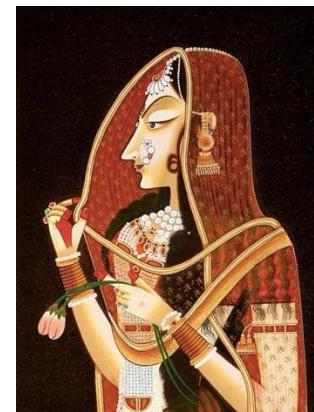
- In 1571 AD, a polished style of Mewar painting emerged for the first time. It had utterly superseded the 'Apabhramsa' by that time.
- Female characters are depicted on a smaller scale than their male counterparts. Males wear loose-fitting embroidered Patras and Turbans, while girls wear loose-fitting long skirts, cholis, and transparent odhnis (veils). Birds, animals, and trees are shown in beautiful paintings.
- Styles of Mewar school- Nathdwara style, Sawar style, Udaipur style, Chavand style, Devgarh style

MARWAR SCHOOL

- The Marwar School refers to the paintings created by the royal family of **Kishangarh, Bikaner, Jodhpur, Nagaur, Pali, and Ghanerao**.
- Styles of Marwar school includes:

Jodhpur style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deer, camel, crow, and horses are all featured in these paintings. These paintings have more of a folk feel to them and are less influenced by Mughal traditions.
----------------------	--

Bikaner style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Bikaner style contains more Mughal characteristics than any other Rajasthani painting style. This was since numerous Mughal painters worked in Bikaner. Portraits, Barahmasa, Ragamala, Bhagwat Purana, and Krishna Lilas are among the topics covered.
Kishangarh style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The romantic lives of Radha and Krishna, influenced by Jaydev's Geet-Govinda, is one of the Kishangarh painters' favourite topics. 'Bani Thani' is a famous painting of this school.



HADOTI SCHOOL

- Rao Chattar Shal** (1631-1659 AD), Shah Jahan's administrator of Delhi, founded the Hadoti school of painting. Hadoti paintings are frequently recognised as among the best in the Rajput style.
- Styles of hadoti school are:

Bundi style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In this, women are depicted with small round faces, receding foreheads, big noses, and full cheeks. Lush landscapes painted in brilliant hues and massed with a variety of tree and flowering creeper forms, water ponds with lotus flowers in the forefront, fish and birds are also features of the Bundi School.
Kota style	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Kota hunting scenes, which portray princes and nobles with their retinue of hunting lions and tigers in the region's rugged and sparsely covered woodlands, are world-famous. The Kota style is regarded as a subset of the Bundi style. Nature is depicted in all her grandeur in the Kota style paintings.

DHUNDAR SCHOOL

- Dhundhar is a historical region of Rajasthan. It includes the districts of **Jaipur, Sawai Madhopur and Tonk**.
- In ancient times, the regions in and around Jaipur were known as **Dhundar**.
- Most parts of Alwar, Jaipur, and Shekhawati are still called **Dhundar Pradesh**.
- Under the banner of Dhundar Pradesh, we study the Amber, Jaipur, Alwar and Shekhawati styles of paintings.
- The Dhundar school of paintings was much popular for its **exclusive folk art paintings**. This painting style was developed by the Hada Rajput rulers in the Bundi and Kota regions.
- The miniature paintings are superb creations and typically portraying beautiful women with round faces, large eyes, long neck and pointed nose.

- The hunting activities of the erstwhile ruler and emperor's are depicted in these paintings.
- Amber style**
- The paintings of **Amber style show strong Mughal influence.**
- During the late 18th and early 19th centuries numerous works of art were produced that depicted episodes from the life of **Lord Krishna**.
- The Amber style possesses its own characteristics, in which the structure of bodies of both male and female has been much influenced by Rajasthani folk art. Because of their kinship with the Mughals, mutual cultural exchange was natural.
- Hence the **impact of ornamented dresses** belonging to the periods of Akbar and Jahangir is visible.

JAIPUR STYLE

- The Jaipur school, largely due to Jaipur's friendly alliances with the Mughals and the patronage of Akbar in the 16th century, remained rooted in the Mughal style though the artists pushed the boundaries back to include tales from **Hindu epics and the escapades of Lord Krishna**.
- The Jaipur style of paintings excelled in life-size portraits, depiction of myths, ragas, astrological principles and different amusing and erotic themes. Jaipur style generally used a large size canvas, ornate backgrounds and bright gorgeous borders.
- Sahib Ram** emerged as a talented artist.
- Fresco tradition** is the main feature of the Jaipur style.

SHEKHAWATI STYLE

- Shekhawati, which means the 'Garden of Shekha', derives its name from **Rao Shekha**, its former ruler.
- It is situated in the **Delhi-Bikaner-Jaipur triangle** and is a semi desert region in north Rajasthan.
- This region has popularly been described as the '**open air art gallery**' of Rajasthan.
- Shekhawati is like a huge open air gallery of painted walls, havelis (mansions) and palaces in the vast expanse of the desert of Rajasthan.
- Every nook and corner of the each town, street and home has been painted with frescoes. The homes built by the people of the region feature exquisite paintings that decorate their walls, doors and interiors.
- The themes of these frescoes depict gods, kings, flowers and scenes from daily life.
- In Shekhawati, the **fresco painters were called Chiteras** and belonged to the caste of Kumhars (Potters).

ALWAR STYLE PAINTINGS

- Alwar is located at the **foothills of the Aravalli hills**. It is a historical city of forts and palaces and is also home to the real tigers due to its rich natural woods, splendid lakes and valleys. Thus, it is also known as '**The Tiger Gateway to Rajasthan**'.
- The Alwar style attained diversity in regard to themes. Krishna Lila, Ram Lila, religious conversation with saints in natural surrounding, Raag-Raginis had been extensively painted.
- Drawings of **white clouds, clear sky, forests and gardens** full of bird and animals, mountains, rivers were painted with according to the natural perspective of Alwar.

→ MIDDLE AND EASTERN KINGDOMS

CHEDIS OF TRIPURI

- The Chedi region was between the **Narmada and the Godavari rivers** and was ruled by the Kalachuri dynasty.
- Earlier, **Kalachuris were subordinate to the Pratiharas** but around the middle of the 10th century, they declared independence.
- The Kalachuri dynasty ruled the **Chedi region (Dahala-mandala)** with their capital at **Tripuri (present-day Jabalpur, M.P.)**.
- The Kalachuris of Chedi fought against the Chandellas of Jejakabhukti and later entered into matrimonial alliances with them. They had conflicts with Palas, Pandyas, Cholas and Pallavas.

CHEDI RULERS

Kokkala I (c. 845 – 885 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He founded the Kalachuri dynasty. He invaded northern Konkan and helped the Rashtrakuta king, Krishna II against the eastern Chalukyas and the Pratiharas. He was married to a Chandella princess.
Yuvraja (c. 915 – 945 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was a powerful ruler who defeated the Rashtrakuta army. In order to commemorate his success, the famous poet Rajasekara staged his drama, Vidya Salabhanjika. The Kalachuri inscription mentions his successful raids against Kashmir and the Himalayan region.
Gangeya Deva (c. 1019 – 1040 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During his reign, the Chedis emerged as one of the greatest political powers in India. He adopted the title of Trikalingadhipati (the lord of Trikalinga) and also the title of Vikramaditya. His success may be attributed to the fact that his kingdom did not face any raids from the Ghaznavids. The other political powers to its north and north-west were strongly affected by the raids of Sultan Mahmud. He issued coins of varied sizes, weights and of different metals such as gold, silver, silver-gold, copper, and silvery-copper. During his reign, the four-armed Lakshmi seated cross-legged on the lotus, holding a lotus in the upper two hands with inscriptions in the Nagari script “Shrimad -Gangeyadeva” on the reverse side was introduced.
Vijayasimha (c. 1177 – 1211 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The last ruler of the dynasty. The Chedi possessions were also lost to the rising dynasties such as the Yadavas of Devagiri, the Ganpatis of Warangal and the Vaghela Rajputs.

→ SENAS OF BENGAL

- The Sena Dynasty ruled Bengal for the period c. **1097 – 1225 CE**. The Sena dynasty ruled most of the northeast region of the Indian sub-continent. Earlier, both Bihar and Bengal were under the dominion of the Pala dynasty.
- Unlike Palas who were Buddhists, the **Sena rulers were devout Hindus**.
- According to the **Deopara inscription**, they had their origin in the south Indian region of Karnataka. The inscription mentions one of the founders in the south, **Samantha Sen**, whose successor was **Hemanta Sen**, the first of the family to whom royal epithets are given in the family records and who seized power from the Palas and styled himself, king, in c. 1095 CE. His successor, **Vijaya Sena**, helped to lay the foundation of the dynasty.

Vijaya Sena (c. 1095 – 1158 CE)

- Founder of the Sena dynasty who ruled for over 60 years and brought peace and prosperity to Bengal.
- He defeated **Bhojavarman Chandella** and conquered Vanga.
- Vijaya Sena had two capitals – **Vijaypura and Vikrampura**.
- Vijay Prasasti (Eulogy of Vijay)** was composed by the **famous poet Sriharsha** in memory of Vijaya Sena.
- The **Barrackpore copper plate** mentions him as **Maharajadhiraja**.
- The **Deopara Prasasti stone inscription** eulogises the Sena kings, especially Vijaya Sena.

Ballal Sena (c. 1158 – 1179 CE)

- Ballal Sena's kingdom consisted of five provinces of **Banga, Barendra (North Bengal), Bagri (probably a portion of lower Bengal), Mithila and Rar (between the Chota Nagpur Plateau on the West and the Ganges Delta)**. He made **Nabadwip** the capital as well.
- It is believed that Ballal Sena revived the orthodox Hindu practices in Bengal, in particular with the establishment of the **reactionary tradition of Kulinism (Hindu caste and marriage rules)**. **Kulinism (higher social status)** refers to a kulina girl marrying a man of the same social class as well as marriage to a man of a higher social class.
- His wife Ramadevi was the princess of the Western Chalukyan empire, which reflects the cordial relations between the two kingdoms.
- He wrote **Adbhut Sagara** and **Dana Sagara**.

Lakshmana Sena (c. 1178 – 1207 CE)

- Under the able leadership of Lakshmana Sena, the Sena dynasty reached its peak. His kingdom extended to **Odisha, Bihar, Assam and probably to Varanasi** as well.
- He also defeated the ruler of the **Gahadavala dynasty, Jayachandra**.
- Seven copper plate inscriptions** belonging to his reign mention him as a great military leader and a patron of learning. These inscriptions also mention his victories over the kings of Kamrupa, Gaur, Kalinga and Kashi.
- To celebrate his successes, he erected **pillars at Allahabad, Benares and Puri**. He was the first ruler of Bengal who extended his power beyond Benares. Some inscriptions found at Gaya mention him as its ruler.

- He assumed the title of **Ariraja-Madana-Sankara** along with the titles **Gaureswara** and **Paramvaishnava**.
- The title Paramvaishnava indicates that he was a **devout Vaishnav** unlike **Ballal Sena and Vijaya Sena who were Shaivas**. His official proclamations started with an invocation to Narayana.
- His court was adorned by poets like **Jayadeva (the famous Vaishnava poet of Bengal and author of Geeta Govinda)**, **Umapati Dhar, Dhoyi**, etc.
- He himself was a learned person and **completed the work of Adbhut Sagara** that was started by his father Ballal Sena.

Decline

- However, during the last years of his rule, the Sena dynasty weakened and started to disintegrate. South Bengal, Orissa and Kamrupa no longer remained under Sena suzerainty. Also, the central Asian invasions aided its fall.
- At the beginning of the 13th century (c. 1203 – 1204 CE), **Muhammad Bakhtiyar Khalji, one of the generals of Mohammad Ghori** attacked Nabadwip and invaded Bihar and Bengal and annexed them to their kingdom.
- He conquered northwest Bengal while eastern Bengal remained under Sena rule. However, by the middle of the 13th century, the **Deva dynasty (Bangladesh)** overthrew the Sena and with it, the Sena rule declined completely.

→ GANGAS OF ORISSA

- The **Eastern Ganga Dynasty**, ruled Kalinga from the **11th – 15th century**.
- The kingdom consisted of present-day **Odisha, parts of West Bengal, Chhattisgarh and Andhra Pradesh**.
- The **Eastern Ganga dynasty** also known as **Rudhi Gangas or Prachya Gangas**.
- **Kalinganagara was their capital** (present-day Srimukhalingam in Srikakulam district of Andhra Pradesh bordering Odisha).
- The **Jagannath temple of Puri and Sun temple at Konark** were built by **Eastern Gangas**.
- It is also important to mention that the **Somavanshi Dynasty or Kesaris** ruled Orissa prior to the Gangas and built the **Lingaraja temple at Bhubaneshwar**.

Lingaraj Temple

- Lingaraj Temple, built in 11th century AD, is **dedicated to Lord Shiva** and is considered as the largest temple of the city Bhubaneswar (Odisha).
- It is believed to have been built by the **Somvanshi King Yayati I**.
- It is built in **red stone and is a classic example of Kalinga style of architecture**.
- The temple is divided into four sections - **Garba Griha** (sanctum sanctorum), **Yajna Shala** (the hall for prayers), **Bhoga Mandap** (the hall of offering) and **Natya Shala** (hall of dance).
- Lingaraj is referred to as '**Swayambhu**' – self-originated Shivling.
- Another important aspect of the temple is that it signifies the **syncretisation of Shaivism and Vaishnavism sects** in Odisha.

- The presiding deity in the Temple is known as **Hari-Hara**; Hari denotes Lord Vishnu and Hara meaning Lord Shiva.
- The other attraction of the temple is the **Bindusagar Lake**, located in the north side of the temple.
- On the western banks of Bindusagar, lies the garden of **Ekamra Van** named after the Hindu mythological texts where Bhubaneswar the capital city of Odisha was referred as Ekamra Van or a forest of a single mango tree.

Anantavarman Chodaganga (c. 1076)

- Anantavarman Chodaganga was the founder of the dynasty who claimed to be a descendant of the **Western Ganga dynasty** (that ruled southern parts of present-day Karnataka from 4th-10th century) and the **Chola dynasty**.
- They, therefore, carried the **south Indian culture to Odisha**.
- He was titled **Trikalingadhipathi (the ruler of three Kalingas)** in 1076 CE, which consisted of Utkal (north), Kosal (west) and Kalinga proper (south).
- He built the famous **Jagannath temple of Puri in Odisha**.

Jagannath temple

- Jagannath Puri temple is called '**Yamanika Tirtha**' where, according to the Hindu beliefs, the power of 'Yama', the god of death has been nullified in Puri due to the presence of Lord Jagannath.
- This temple was called the "**White Pagoda**" and is a part of Char Dham pilgrimages (Badrinath, Dwaraka, Puri, Rameswaram).
- There are four gates to the temple- **Eastern ‘Singhdwara’** which is the main gate with two crouching lions, **Southern ‘Ashwadwara’**, **Western ‘Vyaghra Dwara** and **Northern ‘Hastidwara’**. There is a carving of each form at each gate.
- The **Nilachakra – Or the Blue wheel** perched on top of the temple is made of eight metals or ashtadhatu.
- In front of the entrance stands the **Aruna stambha or sun pillar**.

Festivals associated:

- Devasnana Purnima** – The annual bathing ritual, where the holy trinity is brought out from their sanctum seated in a raised platform and bathed with purified water drawn from a well within the temple premises.
- Chariot Festival** – This happens during the month of June/July. During the festival, the Lord comes out to the street to greet his devotees so people can seek his blessings.

Narsimhadeva (c. 1238 – 1264 CE)

- He built the **Sun Temple at Konark**, a UNESCO World Heritage site.
- The temple is designed in the shape of a colossal chariot.
- It is dedicated to the **Sun God**.
- There are two rows of 12 wheels on each side of the Konark sun temple. Some say the wheels represent the 24 hours in a day and others say the 12 months.
- The seven horses are said to symbolise the seven days of the week.
- Sailors once called this Sun Temple of Konark, the **Black Pagoda** because it was supposed to draw ships into the shore and cause shipwrecks.

- Konark is the invaluable link in the history of the diffusion of the cult of Surya, which originating in Kashmir during the 8th century, finally reached the shores of Eastern India.
- During the rule of **king Bhanudeva (c. 1414 – 1434 CE)**, the dynasty declined and thereafter, the Chalukyas of Vengi ruled the region.

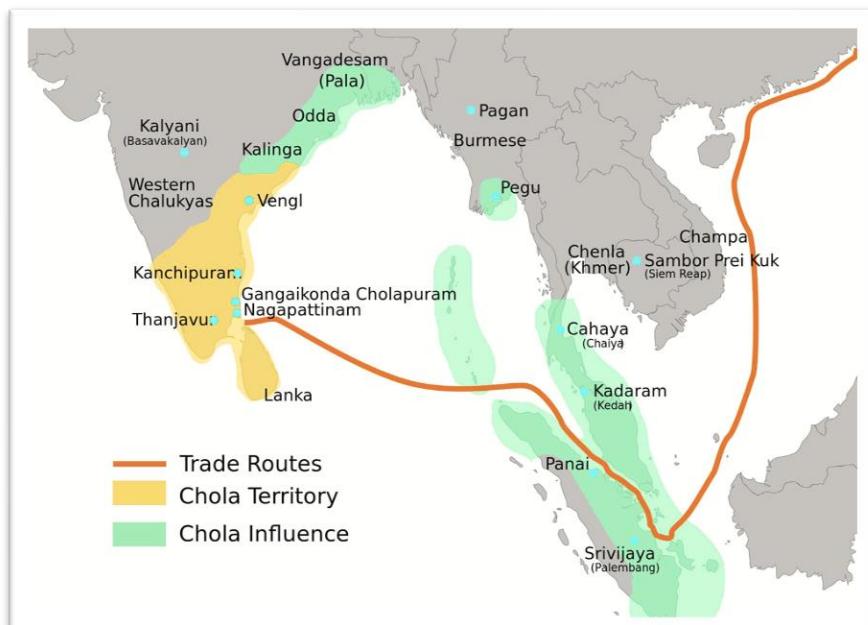
→ SOUTH INDIA

CHOLA DYNASTY

- The reign of the Cholas began in the **9th century when they defeated the Pallavas to come into power**. This rule stretched over for over five long centuries until the 13th century.
- However, around the **2nd century, the state Andhra has a Chola kingdom that flourished far and wide**. The Early periods of the Chola rule saw the onset of the Sangam literature. Kantaman was one of the prominent rulers of this era.
- The **medieval period** was the era of absolute power and development for the Cholas. This is when kings like **Aditya I and Parantaka I became prominent**.
- From here **Rajaraja Chola and Rajendra Chola** further expanded the kingdom into the Tamil region. Later **Kulothunga Chola took over Kalinga to establish a strong rule**. This magnificence lasted until the arrival of the Pandyas in the early 13th century.

Vijayalaya (850 CE)

- The Chola Empire was **founded by Vijayalaya**, who were at first feudatory of Pallavas.
- He took over the Tanjore kingdom in the 8th century and led to the rise of the mighty Cholas by defeating the Pallavas. **Tanjore** was hence made the first capital of the eminent Chola Empire.
- Took the title of **Parakesarivarman**.
- He built **Solesvara temple** of Pudukkottai.



Aditya I (871 - 907 CE)

- Aditya I succeeded Vijayalaya to become the ruler of the empire. He **defeated king Aparajita** and the empire gained massive power under his reign. He **conquered the Pandya Kings** along with the Vadumbas and establishes control over the Pallavas power in the region.
- Known by the surname **Kodandarama**.
- Aditya I was a **devotee of Siva**, and he erected several temples in his honour.

Parantaka I (907 - 955 CE)

- Aditya I was quickly succeeded by his son Parantaka I, who reigned from 907 to 955. During his reign, Cholas' power rose to the **pinnacle**.
- He annexed the territories of the Pandya king, Rujasirhha, who had fled to Ceylon for safety, and to commemorate this feat, Parantaka I took the title "**Maduraikonda**."
- Parantaka I eventually swept away all traces of Pallava power, extending his authority all the way to Nellore in the north.
- Constructed Nataraj Temple.

Parantaka II/ Sundara Chola (957 - 973 CE)

- Parantaka Chola II was a Chola emperor. He was also known as **Sundara Chola** because he was considered the pinnacle of male beauty.
- During his reign, both Sanskrit and Tamil literature received encouragement.
- The **Buddhist work on Tamil grammar, Virasoliyam** eulogises him as a parton of letters and of Buddhism.

Rajaraja Chola (985 - 1014 CE)

- He destroyed the **Chera navy at Trivandrum** (Thiruvananthapuram and attacked Quilon (Kollam).
- He then conquered Madurai and captured the Pandayan ruler.
- He also **invaded Sri Lanka** and captured its northern part, these moves were partly motivated by the desire to bring the trade with Southeast Asia under his control.
- One of his naval exploits was the conquest of the **Maldives islands**.
- **Rajarajeshwara Temple at Tanjore** was completed in 1010 under his reign.
- During his reign, the texts of the Tamil poets **Appar, Sambandar and Sundarar** were collected and edited into **one compilation called Thirumurai**.

Rajendra Chola I (1014 - 1044 CE)

- He succeeded the mighty Rajaraja Chola. **Rajendra I was the first to venture to the banks of Ganges**. He was popularly called the **Victor of the Ganges**.
- His new empire capital was called the **Gangaikondacholapuram** where he received the title of 'Gangaikonda'.
- Under Rajendra I, the vast Chola empire included most of modern-day south India, with the river Krishna as its northern limit, as well as **Sri Lanka, the Laccadives, and the Maldives**.
- Rajendra's audacious campaign against **the Srivijaya (the southern Malay peninsula and Sumatra)** is thought to have begun around 1025 CE.
- He built sixteen miles long and three miles wide **artificial lake** which was one of the largest man-made lakes in India.

Rajadhiraja I (1044 - 1052 CE)

- Rajendra I's son was Rajadhiraja I (r. 1044-52). He ascended to the throne in 1044, but he had been involved with his father's administration since 1018, and he had also distinguished himself in warfare.
- He performed the horse sacrifice and earned the title **Jayamkonda Cholan** (The Victorious Cholan).

- He was also known as **Vijaya Rajendra Cholan** (the victorious Rajendra Cholan).
- He also assumed the title **Jayangonda Chola**.
- He also fought against Somesvara I Ahavamalla, the Western Chalukya monarch (c. 1042-68).
- At first, fortune appears to have favoured the Chola sovereign, but he was killed in the famous **battle of Koppam** in May, 1052 A.D.

Virarajendra (1063 - 1067 CE)

- The famous **grammatical work in Tamil, Virasoliyam** was written by **Buddhamitra** during his period.

Kulottunga I (1070 - 1122 CE)

- He got the title **Kulottunga**, literally meaning the exalter of his race.
- He maintained diplomatic relations with the northern Indian city of Kanauj, as well as distant countries such as Cambodia, Sri Vijaya, and China.
- **Jayamkondar**, his court poet, wrote the poem **Kalingattu parani** to commemorate Kulottunga Chola's military victories.
- Several **land grants** were given to members of the **Shudra community** who were generals and royal officials during his reign, indicating that he was a liberal ruler.
- He established Chola dominance over Malaysia's Sri Vijaya province Kedah.

ART AND CULTURE

- The society and its culture saw massive developments in the reign of the Cholas. In this era, the **temple was the main centre for all social and religious meetings**.
- The **societal structure at this time was divided amongst Brahmins and Non-Brahmins**. Several gods and goddesses were worshipped with **Shiva being a popular source of strength** for the faithful.
- There are links of the relevance of the **Chola Empire with the Trimula deity at Sri Venkateshwara temple**. The religious roots of the Chola Empire go far back to this time. The **Srirangam temple** stands to be a highlight from this era. It was submerged in water for centuries and was renovated later to its former glory.
- Stone and metal sculptures abound in Chola temples. They depict Chola period socio-religious ideas. The Nataraja sculpture is famous not only for its beauty, but also for its spiritual significance.
- Art, religion and literature benefited greatly during this period. Several **Shiva temples** were built across the banks of the Kaveri river. **Thanjavur** still stands to be the biggest and tallest amongst all the temples in India of its time.
- The **Tajore Brihadeeswara temple** is adorned with natural colour paintings. Several of these sites have been classified as World Heritage Sites by UNESCO. These include the **Brihadisvara temple**, the **Gangaikondacholisvaram** and the **Airavatesvara temples**.
- Sculptures of gods and goddesses like Shiva, Vishnu and Lakshmi have been carved out of bronze and serve as a golden reminder of this period.
- Literature was another crucial highlight of this period. Not only did devotional literature take shape but Jain and Buddhist writings also got appreciation and recognition during this phase.
- The popular **Nalayira Divya Prabandham** from this period is a compilation of 4000 Tamil verses and is widely savoured by literary scholars even to this day.

Portraits

- In the art of portraiture, the Cholas outperformed the Pallavas. The best portraits can be found on the walls of **Koranganatha** and **Nageswarasamy temples**.
- In **Kalahasti temple**, there are portraits of **Cholamadevi** and **Kulothunga-III**. They are excellent examples of Chola portraiture.

Paintings

- Paintings flourished, and figures were painted with realism.
- Scenes from **Periyapuram** are beautifully depicted, and the **Kailasanathar temple** in Kanchipuram and the **Vishnu temple** in Malaiyadipatti both house fine examples of Chola paintings.
The Periyapuram is a Tamil poetic account that illustrates the lives of the 63 Nayanars, the canonical poets of Tamil Shaivism.
- During the Chola period, **Rajaraja-I** and **Rajendra** made greater contributions to the development of the art of painting.

Music

- The art of music flourished during the Chola period. In music, twenty-three panns were used. The seven music alphabets were used: sa, ri, ga, ma, pa, da, and ni. In every temple, **Alwar** and **Nayannar** hymns were sung.
- **Nambiandar nambi** and **Nathamuni** made significant contributions to the advancement of music.
- Music has inspired the creation of books. In the Brahadeeswarar temple, several musicians were appointed.
- **Drums, udukai, veena**, and **flute** were well-known musical instruments.
- Temples and mutts provided vocal and instrumental music instruction.

Sculpture

- An important piece of Chola sculpture was the sculpture of **Nataraja** in the **Tandava** dance posture.
- Though the **earliest known Nataraja sculpture, which has been excavated at Ravana phadi cave at Aihole**, was made during the early **Chalukya rule**, the sculpture reached its peak under the Cholas.
- The later phase of Chola art, in the 13th century, is illustrated by the sculpture showing **Bhudevi, or the earth goddess as the younger consort of Vishnu**. She stands in a gracefully flexed attitude on a lotus base holding a lily in her right hand, while the left arm hangs along her side.
- Chola bronze images are considered amongst the finest in the world.

Drama

- Drama was promoted by the Cholas. Drama was linked to music and dance.
- Dramas were performed on a variety of stages and theatres. During the festival, two dramas were performed: **Rajarajeswara natakam** and **Rajarajavijayam**.
- The Chola kings rewarded drama actors with honours. One type of drama is **Koothu**. **Ariyakuthu, Chakki koothu, and Santhi koothu** are all mentioned in the inscriptions.

Brihadeeshvarar Temple

- The Grand Temple of Thanjavur, also known as **Rajarajisvaram and Brihadishvarar Temple**, is a magnificent example of Chola architecture, painting, sculpture, and iconography.
- The figures of **Lakshmi, Vishnu, Ardhanarisvara, and Bikshadana, a mendicant form of Siva**, on the outer walls of the sanctum are notable.
- The fresco paintings and miniature sculptures of scenes from puranas and epics in the temple walls reveal the Chola rulers' religious ideology.
- Dancing girls, musicians, and music masters were chosen from various settlements across Tamil Nadu and attached to this temple.
- Singers had been assigned to recite the bhakti hymns in the temple grounds.

Gangaikonda Cholapuram

- In commemoration of his victory in North India, **Rajendra I built Gangaikonda Cholapuram** on the model of **Brihadisvarar temple in Thanjavur**.
- He constructed the Chola-gangam irrigation tank **Jalastambha (water-pillar)**. It became the coronation centre, which became a Chola landmark.
- The sculptures of **Ardhanariswarar, Durga, Vishnu, Surya, Chandesa, and Anugrahamurty** are the best pieces of the idols of gods placed in the niches of the sanctum's outer wall.



Darasuram Temple

- Darasuram Temple, built by Rajaraja II (1146–1172), is yet another significant Chola contribution to temple architecture.
- In the form of miniatures, **incidents from the Periyapurana** are depicted on the temple's garbhagriha (sanctum sanctorum) wall.

ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNANCE

Kingship

- The king was in charge of the administration. The Chola kings and queens were regarded as God's representatives. The Chola **throne was hereditary**.
- The Chola royal family followed the **principle that the eldest son of the king should succeed to the Chola throne**. Yuvaraja was the name of the heir apparent.
- The **tiger was the royal emblem of Chola kings**.

Central Administration

- The King is the head of the Central Government. The Council of Ministers and officials actively participated in the administration of the Central Government.
- The **higher officials were known as Peruntaram**, while the **lower officials were known as Siruntaram**.

Provincial Administration

- The Chola Empire comprised of nine provinces. They were also known as **mandalams**. The viceroy was the province's ruler. Viceroys were appointed by close relatives of kings.
- The Viceroys were always in contact with the Central Government.

- They responded to the king on a regular basis. The viceroys were assisted in their administrative duties by a large number of officials.

Divisions of Administration

- The Chola administration's success was more dependent on the administrative division's smooth operation.

- Generally, **mandalams were named after the Chola kings' original names or titles**.
- Each **mandalam was subdivided into Kottams or Valanadus**.
- Every **kottam was further subdivided into nadu**.
- Each **nadu was further subdivided into (Urs) villages**, which formed the final administrative unit.

- The Chola administration is mentioned in the **Uttaramerur inscriptions**.
- The local administration at the district, town, and village levels was the most important feature of the Chola administration.
- The most distinguishing feature of the Chola administrative system was village autonomy.

Nadu

- Nadu was one of the Cholas' most important administrative units. Nadus had **democratically elected assemblies**.
- **Nattars** were the names given to the nadus' heads. **Nadu's council was known as nattavai**.
- Agriculture was promoted by Nattavais and Nattars representatives. They were also in charge of public safety and tax collection.

Administration of the Village

- The village assembly, known as **Gram Sabha**, was solely responsible for village administration.
- The village assemblies were in **charge of keeping the peace, tanks, roads, public ponds, revenue collection, the judiciary, education, and temples**.
- The village assemblies were in **charge of paying taxes** owed to the treasury by the villages. They regulated public markets and assisted people during times of flood and famine.
- Assembly provisions for education were made. The village assemblies had complete control over the affairs of the villages.
- They kept law and order in each village. **Chathurvedi mangalam** was the name of a Brahmin settlement.

Variyams

- Village Assemblies effectively managed village administration with the help of variyams. These **variyyams were made up of male members of society**.
- The composition of these variyams, as well as the qualifications and durations of membership, varied from village to village.
- Every village had a plethora of variyams.
- **Thottavariyam** looked after the flower gardens.
- **Niyaya variyam** administered justice. The **Dharma variyam** was in charge of charities and temples.

- **Erivariyyam** was in charge of the water tanks and supply.
- The finance was overseen by the **pon variyam**.
- The **Gramakariya variyam** was in charge of overseeing the work of all committees.
- These varivams' members were dubbed "**Varivaperumakkal**." They performed honourable service. The village officials were either paid in cash or in kind.
- The effectiveness of these variams increased the efficiency of Chola local administration.

Revenue of Cholas

- The Chola Government's main source of income was land revenue. A thorough land survey was carried out.
- Land was **divided into two categories**: taxable land and non-taxable land. The taxable lands had a **wide range of grades**.
- The revenue from land varied according to these grades. Generally, 1/6 of the land yield was collected as tax, either in cash or in kind, or both, depending on the farmers' convenience.
- Aside from land revenue, there were other sources of income such as **customs and tolls**. **Mine, port, forest, and salt pan taxes** were levied.
- **Professional and property taxes** were also levied. A slew of other taxes were imposed.
- The tax burden was heavier on society. People were sometimes unable to pay taxes due to a lack of rain and famine.

→ WESTERN CHALUKYAS OF KALYANI/LATER WESTERN CHALUKYAS

- The Later Western Chalukyas ruled from Kalyani (**present-day Basavakalyan in Karnataka**) between the **10th and the 12th century CE**.
- The kingdom consisted of **modern Deccan and southern India**.
- Earlier, most of the Deccan and central India was under the control of Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta (for over two centuries).
- Around 973 CE, a feudatory of Rashtrakuta from the Bijapur region, **Taila/Tailapa II** defeated his overlord and made Manyakheta his capital.

Someshwara I 1042 -1068 CE

- Soon after becoming the king, he made **Kalyani the capital of Chalukyas**.
- In the same year that is 1042 AD, the king of cholas, **Rajadhiraja Chola I was crowned as king of Cholas** during the same period.
- On becoming **King Rajadhiraja Chola I attacked Kalyani** and demolished most of the forts.
- As a **counter-attack Someshwara, I attacked Kanchipuram**, Cholas capital but he couldn't stay there for longer.
- He **killed cholas King Rajadhiraja I in the battle of Koppam**.
- He caught a fever and he was left uncured. He ended his life by drowning in the river Tungabhadra due to fever.

Vikramaditya VI (c. 1068 – 1076 CE)

- The most successful ruler of this dynasty who was titled “**Permadideva**” and “**Tribhuvanamalla**” (Lord of three worlds).
 - Vikramaditya marched against Vira Rajendra Chola. The latter asked for peace and offered his daughter's hand to Vikramaditya. After the death of Vira Rajendra Chola, Vikramaditya placed his brother-in-law on the throne.
 - Vikramaditya suffered defeat at the hands of eastern **Chalukyan ruler Jayasimha** and was placed as the governor of Bellary. However, in c. **1076 CE**, **Vikramaditya** regained his power with the help of the Hoysalas and ascended the throne as Vikramaditya VI. He also introduced the **Chalukya-Vikrama era in 1076 CE**.
 - His court was adorned with **two great writers Bilhana (a Kashmir poet) and Vijneshwara**.
- Bilhana's work **Vikramankadeva Charita** glorifies Vikramaditya VI.
 - Vijneshwara wrote **Mitakshara** – a **commentary on Yagnavalkya Smriti** (on Hindu family law).
- He **followed Shaivism** and built numerous temples – the **Mallikarjuna temple**, the **Mahadeva temple**, the **Kaitabheshwara temple** and the **Kalleshwara temple**.
 - In the capital Kalyani during the times of **Vikramaditya VI**, a celebrated jurist of the 12th century called **Vijnāneśvara** lived.
 - Vijnāneśvara has written a treatise on inheritance which is among the most influential legal treatises in Hindu Law outside Bengal. The title of this work was **Mitāksarā**.

Mitāksarā is considered to be an important commentary on Yajnavalkya Smriti. Another work by Vijnāneśvara is Dayabhaga, which is also related to Hindu law.

- Vikramaditya VI was succeeded by **Someshwara III** and it was during his reign that Vishnuvardhana Hoysala declared independence.
- Around c. 1190 CE, the attack from the Hoysalas and Yadavas of Devagiri resulted in the decline of the Later Western Chalukya dynasty.

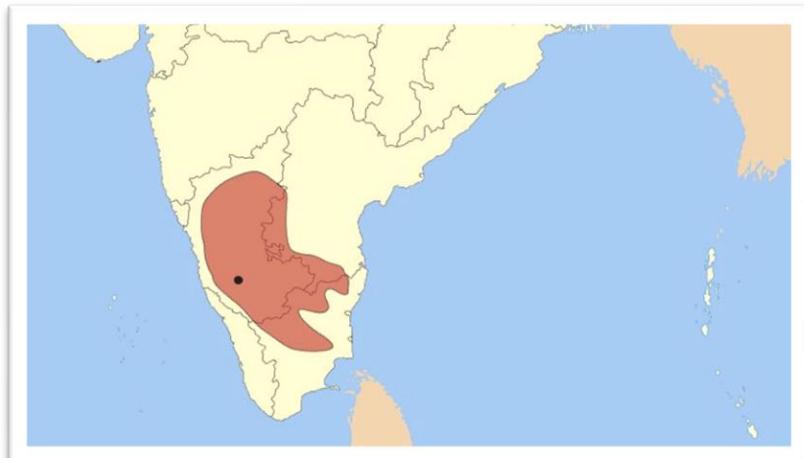
→ EASTERN CHALUKYAS

- The Eastern Chalukyas, also known as the **Chalukyas of Vengi**, were a South Indian dynasty.
- It reigned from the seventh to the twelfth centuries.
- They **began as the Chalukya governors of Badami** in the Deccan region. They eventually rose to prominence.
- Pulakesin II, the Chalukya king of Badami, conquered coastal Andhra. In 616 AD, he appointed **Vishnuvardhana** as viceroy of the region.
- After Pulakesin died in 624 AD facing the Pallavas in the Battle of Vatapi, **Vishnuvardhan I declared his independence** by establishing the Eastern Chalukya dynasty, which extended as far as Cheepurupalli.
- Thus ,Vishnuvardhan I is considered the founder of this dynasty.
- They ruled over the **Vengi region of modern-day Andhra Pradesh** until around 1130 CE. after 1130 CE, they continued to rule under the Chola's overlordship.

- The capital of the Eastern Chalukyas was originally located in **Vengi city**. The capital was later relocated to **Rajahmundry**.
- The Eastern Chalukyas were the source of many wars between the more powerful Cholas and Western Chalukyas throughout their history.
- Vengi's Eastern Chalukyan rule **saw the growth of Telugu**. Chalukya kings were Hindus who made Vengi (Eluru) their capital.

→ HOYSALA DYNASTY

- Hoysala dynasty ruled in India from about **1006 to about 1346 CE in the southern Deccan**.
- They absorbed **Gangavadi (Mysore state)** and the rich lands beyond the **Tungabhadra toward Dharwar and Raichur, and for a time Kaveri (Cauvery) River valley**.
- Their capital was **Belur** which was later shifted to **Halebidu**. This period was a very important era for the development of the art, architecture and religion in the Southern countries.
- The Hoyasala Empire contributed in the growth of both the **Kannada and Sanskrit literature**.
- The earliest known king of this empire is **Nripa Kama II**.
- Another early Hoyasala ruler **Vinayaditya was a feudatory of Chalukyas of Kalyani**.



Vishnuvardhana or Bittiga

- The period assigned to reign of Vishnuvardhana or Bittiga is 1108-1152 AD. He is best known for taking steps to consolidate the Hoyasala Empire.
- He established his capital at **Dorsamudra**, which is modern **Halebidu** in Karnataka.
- He assumed the title of **Talakadagonda and Veera Ganga**.
- He was **originally a Jain** and Jain religion enjoyed high favour under his minister **Gangaraja's protection**.
- He carried out numerous conquests and defeated the mighty kings of the Chola, Pandya and Chera kingdoms.
- It is said that under the influence of Ramanujacharya, **Vishnuvardhana converted to Hinduism and became a Vashnavite**.
- His grandson **Ballala II** (reigned 1173–1220) extended his dominions to the north of **Mysore and defeated the Yadavas**, making the Hoysala dynasty the dominant power in southern India.

- **Ballala III (reigned c. 1292–1342)**, who helped the **sultan of Delhi against the Pandyas, brought about the dynasty's downfall** by his futile ambitions. The Vijayanagar dynasty succeeded the Hoysalas.
- Hoysala architecture and sculpture, especially ornate and intricate, are best seen at **Halebid, Belur, and Somnathpur**. The family liberally patronized Kannada and Sanskrit literary artists.

HOYSALA ARCHITECTURE

- Hoysala temples are sometimes called **hybrid or vesara** as their unique style seems neither completely Dravida nor Nagara, but somewhere in between.
- The Hoysala temples, instead of consisting of a simple inner chamber with its pillared hall, **contain multiple shrines grouped around a central pillared hall** and laid out in the shape of an **intricately-designed star**.
- The most characteristic feature of these temples is that they grow extremely complex with so **many projecting angles** emerging that the plan of these temples starts **looking like a star**, and is thus known as **a stellate-plan**.
- Since they are made out of **soapstone** which is a relatively soft stone, the artists were able to carve their sculptures intricately. This can be seen particularly in the **jewellery of the gods that adorn their temple walls**.
- They are easily distinguishable from other medieval temples by their highly **original star-like ground-plans and a profusion of decorative carvings**.
- Some of the famous temples are: **Hoysaleshvara temple (Lord of the Hoysalas) at Halebid** in Karnataka that was built in **dark schist stone**, **Chennakeshava temple** in Somnathpura, , **Kesava temple** at Belur in Hassan district of Karnataka built by Vishnuvardhana.



Lakshmi Narsimha Temple

- It is built in '**Trikuta**' style, that is, having three shrines- dedicated to Lakshmi Narasimha, Venugopalaswamy and Purushothama.
- The outer walls of the temple bear great detailed carvings in Hoysala style.
- The **concrete flooring on the platform, also called jagati**, is used by devotees as pradakshina path (ambulatory passageway for circumambulation).

→ KAKATIYAS OF WARANGAL

- The literary text **Prataparudrayasobhushana of Vidyanatha** records that this family of rulers was called Kakatiyas as they were known to have worshipped the **goddess Kakati**.
- The Kakatiyas are also known as **worshippers of Svayambhudeva, i.e., Siva**.

- The **Bayyaram tank epigraph** proves that **Venna** was the earliest member of the family and he ruled from a town called Kakati and as such his descendants are styled as Kakatiyas.

KAKATIYAS RULERS

Prola-II (1110 -1158 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He captured the territory between the Krishna and the Godavari from the Chalukyas and ruled over it with Hanumakonda as his capital. The Hanumakonda epigraph dated AD 1162 gives graphic details of his conquests over his neighbours.
Prataparudra-I (1158 – 1196 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He shifted the capital to Warangal. He was a supporter of art literature and authored the Nitisara in Sanskrit. The Thousand Pillar Temple also called the Rudreshwara Swamy Temple was constructed by Rudra Deva in 1163 AD. This temple is one of the finest examples of Kakatiya architecture and sculpture..
Ganapathi Deva	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was most famous among all Kakatiyas and ruled for a long time. The famous poet Tikkana Somayaji was his court poet. Assumed the title of 'Rayagajekesar'. He was a supporter of trade and commerce and issued "Abhya Sasanam" at Motupalli port. Recharla Rudra, a general of Kakatiya king Ganapati Deva, built the Ramappa temple in 1213 AD during the reign of the Kakatiya Empire.
(Rudrambha) (1261 -1291 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> She abdicated the throne in favour of her grandson Prataparudhra-II Chandupatla epigraph The Malakapuram inscription of Rudramadevi helps us to know about the growth of Pasupata sect During her reign, Italian traveler Marco Polo visited the Motupalli port.
Prataparudhra-II (1291-1326 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Malik Kafur invaded Warangal in 1309 A.D, during his rule. Ulugh Khan Ulugh Khan, the son of Ghiasud-din Tughluq captured Warangal in 1323 A.D. and sent Prataparudra II to Delhi

Facts

- KOHINOOR** (the Famous Diamond belonged to Kakatiyas): It was unearthed in Kollur on the banks of the Krishna River belonged to the Kakatiyas.
- The core area of the Kakatiyas was **ecologically in dry zone with scanty rainfall**, with soil not very fertile, the Kakatiyas paid much attention to agriculture, the main occupation of majority of its population. They employed **tank irrigation as a necessary technique** to provide water for cultivation.
- The **Ramappa and Pakala lakes** are the biggest of all the tanks.

- **Sunkamu or sunka**, meant duties on exports and imports, excise duties, and customs duties levied on goods brought to and taken from market cities.
 - Taxes were levied under the Kakatiyas on the ownership of specific items such as horses, bandis (carriages), and banisas (slaves).
 - **Motupalli** was a significant port of Kakatiya Dynasty.
- The Kakatiyas encouraged literature, art and architecture.
 - The **thousand Pillar temple at Hanumakonda** was built during their period and stands as an everlasting contribution. The temple is constructed in the **Trikutalayam style** and features a common mandapa as well as temples to **Shiva, Vishnu, and Surya deva**.
 - **Ramappa Temple, Palampet**: The Rudreshwara (Ramappa) temple is located in Palampet, 65 kilometres from Warangal. It was constructed in the **ekatala style**.
 - **Padmakshi Temple, Hanamkonda**: Prola II built this temple since earlier Kakatiya rulers were Jains and it is one of the oldest Kakatiya temples and a Jain shrine.
 - The greatest Sanskrit poets of this age were **Vidyanadha and Jayapasesanani**.
 - Vidyanatha wrote **Parataparudrayasobhushana**.
 - Jayapasesanani was the author of **Nrityaratnavali** and **Gitaratnavali**.
 - Telugu literature, the most important are **Tikkanna Somayaji** who wrote Nirvachananottarammayatn, **Mantri Bhaskara** who wrote Bhaskara Ramayan

→ YADAVAS OF DEVAGIRI

- The Yadavas of Devagiri claimed their descent from the epic hero Lord Krishna.
- The Yadavas of Devagiri were the descendants of the feudatory nobles of the Western Chalukyan (Chalukyas of Kalyani) Empire.
- The most important territory which they had under them was between **Devagiri (Modern Daulatabad) and Nasik** and was known as **Sevana or Seuna**, though they had influence in modern Maharashtra, North Karnataka and parts of Southern Madhya Pradesh.
- They are known as **founders of Marathi Culture**.

YADAVAS RULERS

Bhillama (1173-1191 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Yadava ruler took advantage of the declining power of the Later Western Chalukyas of Kalyani and rose to power. • He defeated Someswara-IV and declared his independence. • He came into conflict with Vira Balalla-II Hoysala. • He lost his life in the battle of Lakkundi. • Bhillama was referred to as "Chakravartin Yadava" in the Mutugi inscription • He patronised the scholar Bhaskaracharya. One of his important pieces of work was the Siddhanta Siromani consisting of four parts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Leelavati- Dealing with arithmetic and covers calculations, measurement, permutations, progressions, etc. ○ Bijaganita- A treatise on algebra
------------------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Graha Ganita-deals with astronomy. ○ Goladhyaya- deals with spheres. ● Bhaskara also wrote the 'Karana Kautuhala'.
Singhana II (1210-1247A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the most distinguished ruler of this dynasty. ● He defeated Mahadeva, a Kakatiya ruler. ● He also defeated Vira Ballala-II, the Hoysala ruler and expanded his dominion beyond the River Krishna. ● He invaded Gujarat many times and captured Kolhapur which belonged to Silhara dynasty. ● Sarangadeva, the great author of Sangita Ratnakar was an accountant in the court of Singhana II. ● His work Sangeet Ratnakara is considered to be one of the most important works on Hindustani as well as Classical Music.
Ramachandra Deva (1271-1309 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the last great ruler of this dynasty. ● Ala-ud-din-Khilji defeated him and made him as a vassal of the Delhi Sultanate. ● In his court, the celebrated Sanskrit author Hemadri or Hemadpant served as a Chief Minister. ● Chaturvarga Chintamani was his encyclopedic Sanskrit work. ● Hemadpant introduced Modi script for writing in Marathi

Literature and Language:

- The Yadavas were the first major dynasty to use **Marathi** as an **official language**.
- Earlier, both Sanskrit and Kannada had been used for official inscriptions in present-day Maharashtra; subsequently, at least partly due to the efforts of the Yadava rulers, Marathi became the dominant official language of the region



- **Mukundaraya** wrote **Vivekasindhu** in Marathi.
- **Gnyaneshwar** wrote **Gnyaneshwari**, a Marathi language commentary on Bhagwad Gita.
- **Hemadri** composed **Chaturanga Chintamani**. (Sanskrit)
- **Sarangapani** composed **Sangeetaratnakara**.
- **Kannada** was one of the court languages during early Yadava times, as is evident from a number of Kannada-language inscriptions.

→ ARAB CONQUEST OF SIND (712 A.D.)

- The **religion Islam was born at Mecca in Arabia.**
- Its founder was **Prophet Muhammad**. But his teachings made the wealthy people of Mecca his enemies.
- Therefore, he migrated to Medina in **622 A.D.** which was the starting point of the Muslim calendar and the Muslim era called **hijra**.
- After eight years he returned to Mecca with his followers. He died in 632 A.D.

Caliphate

- The **institution of caliphate was conceived in 632 CE** after the death of the Prophet Muhammad (570-632 CE). The **Umayyads and the Abbasids** were called the caliphs. They expanded their rule by conquests and spread their religion Islam.
- The word Caliph is derived from the **Arabic word “Khalifa”** which means deputy and was the title given to the rulers **who succeeded Prophet Muhammad**.
- There was a shift to **absolute monarchy in Islamic history**, embodied by the **Umayyad Dynasty (661-750 CE)**.
- In **712 A.D.**, **Muhammad bin Qasim** invaded Sind. He was the **commander of the Umayyad kingdom**.
- Qasim defeated **Dahir, the ruler of Sind** and killed him. His capital **Aror** was captured.
- Qasim extended his conquest further into **Multan**. Qasim organized the administration of Sind. The people of Sind were given the status of **zimmis (protected subjects)**. There was no interference in the lives and property of the people. Soon, Qasim was recalled by the Caliph.
- However, Sind continued to be under the Arabs. But the Muslims could not expand their authority further into India due to the presence of the **powerful Pratihara kingdom in western India**.

Impact

- Although the conquest of Sind did not lead to further conquests immediately, it had resulted in the diffusion of **Indian culture abroad**. Many Arab travellers visited Sind.
- Knowledge on Hindu philosophy, mathematics, astronomy, and medicine became popular with the Arabs.
- Famous Arab mathematician **Al- Khawarizmi** translated many Indian books into Arabic.

- Around **820 CE**, he was appointed as the astronomer and **head of the library of the House of Wisdom** in Baghdad.
- He was called the father of algebra. He wrote **Kitab al-Jabr -Muqabala**.
- The word **algorithm** is derived from Latinization of his name.
- His book "**kitâb al- hisâb al-hind**" used **Indian numerals**.
- His **geography book**, "**Kitâb Sûrat al-Ard**," also known as the "Book of the Image of the Earth," is made up of lists of localities' latitudes and longitudes.

- Many Indian scholars such as **Bhala, and Manaka** were invited to Baghdad.
- An **Indian physician Dhana** served as the **chief medical officer** at Baghdad.
- **Abu Mashar**, an Arab astronomer came to Benaras to study astronomy there for ten years.

- With the help of Indian scholars, many noted Indian works on astronomy such as **Brahma Sidhanta and Khanda Khadyaka** were translated into Arabic.
- Since Sind was a part of the Arab empire, the inflow of Indian knowledge was great.

→ ABBASID DYNASTY

- The Abbasids were an Arabic dynasty that initially ruled over most of the Islamic empire (save some western parts) after assuming the caliphate in **750 CE**, later on, their empire fragmented, however, they retained spiritual supremacy as caliphs until 1258 CE.
- They assumed the caliphal title after ousting the ruling Umayyad Dynasty, hence serving as the second dynasty to serve as a Caliphate (632-1924 CE, intermittently).
- By the end of the ninth century A.D., the Abbasid Caliphate declined. The Turkish governors established **independent kingdoms and the Caliph became only a ritual authority**.
- One among them was **Alptigin whose capital was Ghazni**. His **successor and son-in-law Sabuktigin**.
- He succeeded in capturing **Peshawar from Jayapala**. But his raids did not produce a lasting effect. He was succeeded by his son, Mahmud.

→ MAHMUD OF GHAZNI (A.D. 997-1030)

- Mahmud is said to have made many raids into India. At that time, North India was divided into a number of Hindu states.
- On the frontier of India, there existed the **Hindu Shahi kingdom** which extended from the Punjab to Kabul. The other important kingdoms of north India were Kanauj, Gujarat, Kashmir, Nepal, Malwa and Bundelkhand.
- The **initial raids were against the Hindu Shahi kingdom** in which its king Jayapala was defeated in 1001, **Battle of Waihind**. After this defeat, Jayapala immolated himself because he thought that his defeat was a disgrace.
- His successor Anandapala fought against Mahmud but he was **also defeated in the Battle of Chach**, near Peshawar in 1008. In this battle, As a result of his victory, Mahmud extended his rule over most of the Punjab.
- The subsequent raids of Mahmud into India were aimed at plundering the rich temples and cities of northern India.
- In **1011**, he raided **Nagarkot** in the Punjab hills and **Thaneshwar** near Delhi.
- In **1018**, Mahmud plundered the city of **Mathura** and also attacked **Kanauj**.
- His next important raid was against Gujarat. In **1024**, Mahmud marched from Multan across Rajputana, defeated the Solanki King **Bhimadeva I**, **plundered Anhilwad** and sacked the famous temple of **Somanatha**. Then, he returned through the Sind desert.
- His last campaign was in **1027 AD against the Jats**.
- Mahmud died in 1030 A.D.

Impact of Mahmud

- Mahmud was not a mere raider and plunderer of wealth.

- He built a **wide empire from the Punjab in the east to the Caspian sea on the west and from Samarkand in the north to Gujarat in the south.**
- The Ghaznavid empire roughly **included Persia, Trans-oxyana**, Afghanistan and Punjab.
- Transoxania, also spelled Transoxiana, is historical region of Turkistan in Central Asia east of the **Amu Darya (Oxus River)** and west of the **Syr Darya (Jaxartes River)**, roughly corresponding to present-day **Uzbekistan and parts of Turkmenistan, Tajikistan, and Kazakhstan**.
- He also **patronized art and literature**. **Firdausi** was the poet-laureate in the court of Mahmud. He was the author of **Shah Namah**.
- **Alberuni** stayed in Mahmud's court and wrote the famous **Kitab-i-Hind**, an account on India.
- His conquest of Punjab and Multan completely changed the political situation in India. He **paved the way for the Turks and Afghans for further conquests** and make deeper incursions into the Gangetic valley at any time. He **drained the resources of India** by his repeated raids.
- The Hindu Shahi kingdom was guarding the gates of India against foreign invaders. Mahmud destroyed it and thus **India's frontiers became defenceless**.
- The inclusion of Punjab and Afghanistan in Ghazni's kingdom made the subsequent Muslim conquests of India comparatively easy.

→ GHURID DYNASTY AND MUHAMMAD GHORI

- The Ghurid dynasty started as **vassals of Ghazni** but became independent after the death of Ghazni.
- The Ghurid Empire was based in **Ghur in northwest Afghanistan**.
- The power of Ghurids increased under **Sultan Alauddin who earned the title of 'the world burner' (Jahan soz)** because during the middle of the 12th century he **ravaged Ghazni** and burnt it to the ground to avenge the treatment meted out to his brothers at Ghazni.
- In c. **1173 CE, Shahabuddin Muhammad** (also known as **Muiz-ud-din Muhammad bin Sam**), particularly known as **Muhammad Ghori** ascended the throne at Ghazni while his elder brother ruled at **Ghur**.
- He is considered one of the greatest rulers of the Ghurid dynasty and **laid the foundation of Muslim rule in India** as well as in South Asia.
- Being ambitious he wanted to expand his territory but as there was **power Khwarazmian Empire** to its west, therefore he turned his attention towards India.
- He carried out a number of invasions to establish his rule over India, unlike Mahmud of Ghazni who was more interested in accumulating the wealth that existed in India. Muhammad Ghori's political achievements in India were greater than that of Mahmud, however, Mahmud of Ghazni was a more successful warrior.

MUHAMMAD GHORI (C. 1173 – 1206 CE)

- In c. **1175 CE**, Muhammad Ghori **captured Multan and occupied Uchch** (in upper Sindh) in his subsequent expedition.

- In c. **1178 CE**, he attempted to **penetrate into Gujarat** by marching across the Rajputana desert but the Gujarat Chalukyan ruler, Solanki **Bhima II completely defeated him** at the **Battle of Kayadara (near Mount Abu)**.
- He now **realised the necessity of creating a suitable base in Punjab** before venturing on the further conquest of India. Accordingly, he launched a campaign against the Ghaznavid possessions in Punjab.
- By c. **1190 CE**, Muhammad Ghori had conquered **Peshawar, Lahore and Sialkot** and was ready to make advances towards Delhi and the Gangetic doab.
- After the annexation of **Punjab**, Muhammad Ghori attempted to advance into Gangetic doab which brought him into conflict with Prithviraj Chauhan, the Rajput ruler.
- **Prithviraj Chauhan** after capturing Delhi and other small Rajputana states wanted to exercise control over Punjab and Ganga valley.
- The conflict started with the claims over **Tabarbinda (Bhatinda)**. In the **first battle fought at Tarain (present Haryana)** in c. **1191 CE**, Ghori was completely defeated and Prithviraj Chauhan conquered Bhatinda.
- In the **second battle of Tarain (c. 1192 CE)**, Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated and Ghori emerged victorious. Although the Indian army was huge in number, the Turkish forces were well organised with a **swift-moving cavalry**. The use of horse shoes and iron stirrup favoured the Turkish forces. Prithviraj Chauhan escaped but was captured.
- He was **allowed to rule over Ajmer** for some time as the coins pertaining to this period bear the legend '**Prithvirajadeva' on one side and 'Sri Muhammad Sam' on the other**'. However, soon, Prithviraj Chauhan was executed on charges of conspiracy.
- After the Battle of Tarain, Muhammad Ghori returned to Ghazni leaving the affairs in India in the hands of one of his **trusted slave, Qutub-ud-din Aibak**.
- The Turkish captured the **fortresses of Saraswati, Hansi, Samana, Delhi and Ajmer**.
- In c. **1194 CE**, Muhammad Ghori **returned to India and fought a battle with Jaichandra**, the ruler of Kannauj, of the Gahadavala dynasty at **Chandawar** (near Kannauj) in which Jaichandra was defeated and killed.
- The **battle of Tarain and Chandawar** laid the foundation of Turkish rule in north India.
- In c. 1195 CE, Qutub-ud-din Aibak conquered Aligarh and Ranthambore.
- In his **second battle with Bhima II**, Aibak conquered Gujarat. He also **conquered Bundelkhand**, ruled by the Chandella Rajputs.
- In c. **1197 CE**, Muhammad **Bhakhtiyar Khilji** (General of Muhammad Ghori) captured **Bihar and in c. 1202 CE, he captured Bengal**. He destroyed the universities of Vikramshila and Nalanda. He became Viceroy of Bihar and Bengal.
- **Muhammad Ghori led his last campaign into India in c. 1206 CE** in order to deal with the **Khokhar rebellion**.
- On his way back to Ghazni, he was killed by a fanatic belonging to a rival Muslim sect. The reign of India passed on to Aibak, who laid the foundation of the slave dynasty.

Causes for the failure of Hindu kingdoms

- The most important cause was that **they lacked unity**.
- The **growth of feudalism** i.e., rise of the local landed elements and chiefs had weakened the administrative structure and military organisation of Indian states. They were divided by factions. The Rajput princes exhausted one another by their mutual conflicts.

- On the other hand the tribal structure of the Turks and the growth of **iqta and khalisa systems** enabled the Turks to maintain long standing armies which could be kept in fields for a long time.
- *Khalisa was the term for the land whose revenue was exclusively meant for the Sultan himself, while the revenue from the land, called iqta, was assigned by the state to the nobles.*
- *The assignees (known as muqtis and walis) collected revenue from these areas, defrayed their own expenses, paid the troops maintained by them and sent the surplus (fawazil) to the centre.*
- **Hindu states military methods were out of date and far inferior** to those of Muslims. Indians continued to rely on elephants while the Muslims possessed quick-moving cavalry.
- The Muslims soldiers had better organization and able leaders. Their **religious zeal and their greed for the greater wealth of India provided stimulus** to them. Among the Hindus, the duty of fighting was confined to a **particular class, the Kshatriyas.**

→ DELHI SULTANATE

The period from **1206 A.D. to 1526 A.D.** came to be known as the Delhi Sultanate period.
 This period witnessed many dynasties and various rulers.

→ SLAVE DYNASTY

- The Slave dynasty ruled from **c. 1206 – 1290 CE.**
- It was also named the '**Mamluk**' **dynasty**; the word Mamluk is an Arabic word that means "slave/owned".
- In fact, three dynasties were established during this period. They were –
- **Qutbi dynasty** (c. 1206 – 1211 CE) – Its founder was Qutub-ud-din Aibak.
- **First Ilbari dynasty** (c. 1211- 1266 CE) – Its founder was Iltumish.
- **Second Ilbari dynasty** (c. 1266 – 1290 CE) – Its founder was Balban.

Qutub-ud-din Aibak (c. 1206 – 1210 CE)

- Qutub-ud-din Aibak founded the Slave dynasty. He was a **Turkish slave of Muhammad Ghori** who played an important part in the expansion of the Turkish Sultanate in India after the Battle of Tarain.
- Muhammad Ghori made him the governor of his Indian possessions. He raised a standing army and established his hold over north India even during the lifetime of Ghori.
- After the death of Muhammad Ghori (c. 1206 CE), **Tajuddin Yaldauz**, the ruler of Ghazni claimed his rule over Delhi and the governor of Multan and Uchch, **Nasiruddin Qabacha** wanted independence. He also had to face many revolts from Rajputs and other Indian rulers. However, Aibak, by displaying his mighty power as well as other conciliatory measures, was able to win over his enemies.
- He defeated Yaldauz and **severed all connections with Ghazni** and thus founded the Slave dynasty as well as the Delhi Sultanate.
- Muslim writers called Aibak "**Lakh Baksh**" or giver of lakhs because he donated liberally.
- He was titled "**Sultan**" and he made Lahore his capital.

- He also started the construction of the Qutub Minar (first storey only) after the name of the famous Sufi saint **Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar**. It was later completed by Iltumish.
- Aibak died suddenly while playing Chaugan (horse polo) in c. 1210 CE.

Aram Shah (c. 1210 CE)

Qutub-ud-din was succeeded by his son Aram Shah who was incapable as a ruler. He was opposed by the Turkish armies and his rule lasted for only eight months.

Iltutmish (c. 1210 – 1236 CE)

- Iltutmish belonged to the **Ilbari tribe** and therefore, his dynasty was named the Ilbari dynasty. His half-brothers sold him as a slave to Aibak who made him his son-in-law by giving his daughter to him.
- Later, Aibak appointed him as **Iqtadar of Gwalior**.
- In c.1211 CE, Iltutmish **dethroned Aram Shah** and became the Sultan with the name of **Shamsuddin**. He is regarded as the **real consolidator of Turkish rule in India**.
- During the first ten years of his reign, he mostly concentrated on securing his throne from his rivals. The commanders of Muhammad Ghori like Yaldauz, Qabacha of Multan and Ali Mardan of Bengal and Bihar rose against him.
- Iltutmish **defeated Yaldauz in the battle of Tarain (c. 1215 CE)** and also drove away Qabacha from Punjab.
- In c. **1220 CE**, the leader of the Mongols, **Temujin, popularly known as Chengiz Khan**, started his march towards Central Asia. He defeated **Jalal-ud-din Mangabarni, the ruler of Khwarizm**. Mangabarni escaped from the Mongols and sought asylum from Iltutmish. Iltutmish refused to provide him shelter in order to save his empire from the onslaught of the Mongols. This diplomatic policy of Iltutmish helped him to save his empire from the wrath of Chengiz Khan.
- Iltutmish **brought Bengal and Bihar back into the Delhi Sultanate**. He also suppressed the Rajput revolts and recovered Ranthambore in c. 1226 CE and by c. 1231 CE, Iltutmish established his control over Bayana (Bharatpur), Mandor (Jodhpur), Jalore and Gwalior.
- He **led an expedition against the Chalukyas of Gujarat** but that remained unsuccessful.
- Iltutmish was a great statesman. In c. **1229 CE**, he received ‘mansur’, the letter of recognition from the **Abbasid Caliph** by which he **became the legal sovereign ruler** of India.
- He completed the construction of Qutub Minar at Delhi, the tallest stone tower in India (238 ft).
- He also **introduced the Arabic coinage in India** and the **silver tanka weighing 175 grams** became a standard coin in medieval India.
- The **silver tanka remained the basis of the modern rupee**.
- Iltutmish organised **Turkan-i-Chahalgani**, a new class of the **ruling elite of forty powerful military leaders, the Forty**.
- He patronised many scholars and a number of Sufi saints came to India during his reign.
- **Minhaj-us-Siraj** (author of Tahaqqat-i-Nasuri), **Taj-ud-din, Muhammad Junaidi, Fakhrul-Mulk-Isami, Malik Qutub-ud-din Hasan** were his contemporary scholars who added grandeur to his court.
- He nominated his daughter as his successor.

Raziya Sultan (c. 1236 – 1239 CE)

- Although Iltutmish nominated his daughter Raziya as his successor, the Qazi of Delhi and Wazir put **Ruknuddin Feroz** on the throne.
- When the governor of Multan revolted, Ruknuddin marched to suppress that revolt. Using this opportunity, Raziya with the support of Amirs of Delhi seized the throne of Delhi Sultanate.
- Raziya Sultan was the first and only female ruler of medieval India's Sultanate period.
- Raziya appointed an Abyssinian slave, **Malik Jamal-ud-din Yaqut as master of the Royal horses** (Amir-i-akhur). The recruitment of a few other non-Turks to important positions aroused resentment among the Turkish nobles. Raziya Sultan discarded the female apparel and held the court with her face uncovered which further created resentment. She even went hunting and led the army.
- In c. **1240 CE**, **Altunia, the governor of Bhatinda (Sirhind)** revolted against her. Raziya alongside Yaqut marched against Altunia, but on the way, Turkish followers of Altunia murdered Yaqut and took Raziya prisoner.
- In the meantime, the Turkish nobles put Bahram, another son of Iltutmish on the throne. However, Raziya won over her captor, Altunia and after marrying him, proceeded to Delhi. But she was defeated and killed on the way by Bahram Shah.

Bahram Shah (c. 1240 – 1242 CE)

- The fall of Raziya Sultan paved the way for the ascendancy of 'the Forty'.
- During the reign of Bahram Shah, there continued the struggle for supremacy between Sultan and the nobles.
- The Turkish nobles supported Bahram Shah in the beginning but later became disordered and during this unrest, Bahram Shah was killed by his own army.

Alauddin Masud Shah (c. 1242 – 1246 CE)

- He was the son of Ruknuddin Feroz Shah and nephew of Raziya Sultan.
- After the death of Bahram Shah, he was chosen as the next ruler.
- However, he was incompetent and incapable of handling the affairs in the government and was replaced by Nasiruddin Mahmud.

Nasiruddin Mahmud (c. 1246 – 1265 CE)

- He was the grandson of Iltutmish who was young and inexperienced. He had ascended the throne with the help of **Balban/Ulugh Khan, a member of Chahalgani (the Forty)** who himself assumed the position of regent.
- He married his daughter to Nasiruddin and therefore, the real power lay in the hands of Balban. Balban was powerful in the administration but he had to face the intrigues of his rivals in the royal court. He overcame all the difficulties.
- In c. 1265 CE, **Nasiruddin Mahmud died** and according to some historians like **Ibn Batuta and Isami, Balban poisoned him** and ascended the throne.

Balban (c. 1266 – 1286 CE)

- Ghiyasuddin Balban, who was also known as **Ulugh Khan, served as Naib or regent** to Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud. Balban was all powerful in the administration but he had to face the intrigues of his rivals in the royal court. He had overcome all the difficulties.
- In **1266 Nasiruddin Mahmud died** without issues and Balban ascended the throne.

- Balban's experience as a regent made him understand the problems of the Delhi Sultanate. He knew that the real threat to the monarchy was from the nobles called "**The Forty**". He, therefore, was sure that by enhancing the power and authority of the monarchy, he could solve the problem.
- According to Balban, the Sultan was God's shadow on earth, **Zil-e-Ilahi** and the recipient of divine grace, Nibyabat-e- Khudai.
- Balban **enhanced the power of the monarchy**. He **introduced rigorous court discipline** and new customs like **prostration (sajida)** and **kissing the Sultan's feet (paibos)** to prove his superiority over the nobles.
- He introduced the **Persian festival of Nauroz** to impress the nobles and people with his wealth and power.
- He stood forth as the champion of Turkish nobility. He excluded non-Turks from administration and Indian Muslims were not given important positions in the government. To monitor the activities of the nobles he appointed spies and developed an efficient spy system.
- Balban was determined to break the power of 'The Forty'. He spared only the loyal nobles and eliminated all others by fair or foul means. **Malik Baqbaq**, the governor of Bedaun, was publicly flogged for his cruelty towards his servants. **Haybat Khan**, the governor of Oudh was punished for killing a man who was drunk. The governor of Bhatinda, **Sher Khan** was poisoned.
- Balban had to deal with internal as well as external problems. The Mongols were looking for an opportunity to attack the Sultanate, the Indian rulers were ready to revolt at the smallest opportunity, distant provincial governors wanted to gain independence and the outskirts of Delhi were often plundered by the Mewatis. To handle all these problems, he adopted a stern policy and organised a strong central army to deal with internal issues and also to repel the Mongols.
- He **established a separate military department, Diwan-e-arz** and reorganised the army. He deployed the army in different parts of his country to suppress the rebellious elements.
- Balban paid more attention to restore law and order instead of expanding his kingdom. Balban took stern action against the Mewatis and prevented such robberies. Robbers were mercilessly pursued and sentenced to death, as a result of which the roads became safe for travel.
- In c. **1279 CE**, **Tughril Khan**, the governor of Bengal revolted against Balban. Balban sent his forces to Bengal and Tughril Khan was beheaded. Balban appointed his son **Bughra Khan** as the governor of Bengal.
- In the northwest, the **Mongols reappeared** and Balban sent his son **Prince Mahmud** against them. But the prince was killed in the battle and it was a moral blow to Balban.
- Balban **died in c. 1287 CE**. He was one of the main architects of the Delhi Sultanate. However, he could not fully safeguard India from the Mongol invasion.

Kaiqubad (c. 1287 – 1290 CE)

- Kaiqubad was the grandson of Balban and was made the Sultan of Delhi by the nobles.
- He was soon replaced by his son, Kaimur.
- In c. 1290 CE, **Feroz, the Ariz-e-Mumalik (the minister of war)** murdered Kaimur and captured the throne. He took the title of Jalal-ud-din Khalji and established the Khalji dynasty.

→ KHILJI DYNASTY

Jalal-ud-din Khalji (c. 1290 – 1296 CE)

- Jalal-ud-din Khalji was the founder of the Khalji dynasty. He was 70 years old when he assumed power. He had been the **warden of the marches** in the northwest and had fought many successful battles against the Mongols during Balban's reign.
- The **Khaljis were of mixed Turkish-Afghan descent**, they did not exclude the Turks from high offices but the rise of the Khaljis to power **ended the Turkish monopoly of high offices**.
- He tried to mitigate some of the harsh aspects of Balban's rule. He was the first ruler of the Delhi Sultanate who clearly put **forth his view that the state should be based on the willing support of the governed** and that since the large majority of the population in India were Hindus, the state in India could not be an Islamic state.
- He adopted the policy of tolerance and avoided harsh punishments. For instance, **Malik Chhajju**, nephew of Balban was allowed to remain the governor of Kara. When Chhajju revolted, it was suppressed but he was pardoned. When the thugs (robbers) looted the country, they were allowed to go after a severe warning. In c. 1292 CE, when Malik Chhajju revolted again, he was replaced by his nephew and son-in-law, Alauddin Khalji.
- During the reign of Jalal-ud-din Khalji, **Alauddin invaded Devagiri** and accumulated enormous wealth. During the reception in c. 1296 CE, he treacherously murdered his father-in-law near Kara and usurped the throne of Delhi. He made generous gifts to the nobles and soldiers to win over them.

Alauddin Khalji (c. 1296 – 1316 CE)

- Alauddin Khalji was the nephew and son-in-law of Jalal-ud-din Khalji. He was appointed as the **Amir-i-Tuzuk (Master of ceremonies)** and also **Arizi-i-Mumalik (minister of war)** during the reign of Jalaluddin Khalji.
- He followed Balban's policy of governance that was quite contrary to Jalaluddin's policy of tolerance. He was convinced that the general prosperity of the nobles, intermarriage between noble families, inefficient spy system and drinking liquor were the basic reasons for rebellions. Therefore, he passed four laws:

- The public sale of liquor and drugs was totally banned.
- The intelligence system was reorganised and all the secret activities of the nobles were immediately reported to the Sultan.
- He confiscated the property of the nobles.
- Social gatherings and festivities without the permission of the Sultan were not allowed. By such stringent rules, his reign was free from rebellions.

Military Campaigns of Alauddin Khalji

- Alauddin maintained a huge permanent standing army. He sent his army six times against the Mongols. The first two were successful but the third Mongol invader, **Khwaja** came up to Delhi but was stopped from entering the capital city.
- The next three Mongol invasions were also dealt with severely and thousands of Mongols were killed. The northwestern frontier was fortified and **Ghazi Malik (Ghayasuddin Tughlaq)** was appointed as the Warden of Marches to protect the frontier.

- **Conquest of Gujarat** – Alauddin Khalji sent an army under two of his generals, **Nusrat Khan and Ulugh Khan** to capture Gujarat in c. 1299 CE. The ruler Rai Karan and his daughter escaped while the queen was caught and sent to Delhi. **Malik Kafur**, a eunuch was also taken to Delhi and later he was made the military commander.

- **Conquest of Rajputana** – After capturing Gujarat, Alauddin's attention turned towards Rajputana.

- **Ranthambore** – It was considered to be the strongest fort of Rajasthan. Initially, the Khalji army suffered losses and Nusrat Khan even lost his life. In c.1301 CE, the fort fell to Alauddin. The Rajput women committed Jauhar or self-immolation.
- **Chittor** – Alauddin next turned against Chittor. It was another powerful state of Rajputana. In c. 1303 CE, Alauddin stormed the Chittor fort. According to some scholars, Alauddin attacked Chittor because he coveted Padmini, the beautiful queen of Raja Ratan Singh. Raja Ratan Singh was defeated. The Rajput women including Rani Padmini performed Jauhar. This Padmini episode was graphically mentioned in the **book Padmavat written by Jayasi**.
- **Malwa and others** – In c. 1305 CE, under the able leadership of **Ain-ul-Mulk**, the Khalji army captured Malwa. Ujjain, Mandu, Chanderi and Dhar were also annexed.
- After this, Alauddin Khalji sent Malik Kafur to the south and himself attacked **Siwana. Raja Shital Deva**, the ruler of Siwana was defeated.
- In c. 1311 CE, **Jalore** – another Rajput kingdom was annexed. Thus, by c.1311 CE, Alauddin Khalji became the master of north India and captured large parts of Rajputana.

- **Conquest of Deccan and the far South** – Alauddin's greatest achievement was the conquest of Deccan and the far south. This region was ruled by four important dynasties – **Yadavas of Devagiri, Kakatiyas of Warangal, Hoysalas of Dwarasamudra and the Pandyas of Madurai**. Alauddin sent Malik Kafur to lead the Khalji dynasty invasions to south India.
 - In c. 1306 – 1307 CE, **Malik Kafur attacked Devagiri**. The ruler of Devagiri, **Rai Ramachandra surrendered** and was treated honourably. He was given a district of Gujarat and one of his daughters was married to Alauddin.
 - In c. 1309 CE, **Malik Kafur** launched his campaign against **Warangal**. Its ruler **Prataparudra Deva** was defeated and an enormous booty was collected from him.
 - Malik Kafur's next target was the **Hoysala ruler Vira Ballala III**. He was defeated and a huge booty was seized and sent to Delhi.
 - Kafur then marched against the Pandyas. **Vira Pandya fled the capital Madurai** and Kafur seized enormous wealth from the Pandya kingdom.
 - According to **Amir Khusrav**, **Malik Kafur** reached as far as Rameshwaram, and returned to Delhi with huge wealth. Alauddin honoured Malik Kafur by appointing him **Naib Malik** of the empire.
 - Alauddin Khalji died in c. 1316 CE. Although the Sultan was illiterate, he patronized poets like **Amir Hasan and Amir Khusrav**. He built a famous gateway known as **Alai Darwaza** and constructed a new capital at Siri.
 - **Alauddin assumed the title of Sikander-i-Azam** and gave the **title of Tuti-i-Hind to Amir Khusrav**.

Administration of Alauddin Khalji

- **Military Reforms** – Alauddin Khalji maintained a large permanent standing army and paid them in cash from the royal treasury. According to historian **Ferishta**, he recruited 4,75,000 cavalrymen. He introduced the system of **dagh (branding of horses) and prepared**

huliya (descriptive list of soldiers). In order to have maximum efficiency, a strict review of the army from time to time was carried out.

- **Market Reforms** – Alauddin established four separate markets in Delhi, one for grain (mandi); another for cloth, sugar, dried fruits, oil and butter; third for horses, cattle and slaves and the fourth market for miscellaneous commodities.

- Each market was under the control of a high officer called **Shahna-i-Mandi**. The supply of grain was ensured by **holding stocks in government storehouses**. There were **regulations in place to fix the price of all commodities**.
- A separate department called **Diwan-i-Riyasat** (*Office of the minister of trade and commerce*) was created under an officer called **Naib-i-Riyasat**.
- Every merchant was registered under the market department. There were secret agents called **munhiyans** who sent reports to the Sultan regarding the functioning of these markets. The Sultan also sent slave boys to buy various commodities to check prices. Any violation of the Sultan's orders resulted in severe punishment. No hoarding was permissible and even during famines, the same price was maintained.

Reasons for controlling the market- Apart from the hope to enjoy the support from the citizens Alauddin has some additional reasons for controlling the market. The Mongol invasions of Delhi had pin-pointed the need to raise a strong army to check them. But such an army would soon exhaust his treasure unless he could lower the prices and hence lower their salary.

- **Land Revenue Administration** – Alauddin took important steps in the land revenue administration. He was the **first sultan of Delhi who ordered measurement of land**.
- **Land revenue was collected in cash** which enabled the Sultan to pay the soldiers in cash. His land revenue reforms provided a basis for the future reforms of Sher Shah and Akbar. The state officer measured the land and fixed land revenue accordingly.

→ TUGHLUQ DYNASTY

Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq/Ghazi Malik

- Founder of the Tughlaq dynasty.
- Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq laid the foundation for **Tughlaqabad (a strong fort)** near Delhi.
- Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq sent his son **Jauna Khan/Muhammad bin Tughlaq** against **Warangal (Kakatiyas)** and **Madurai (Pandyas)**.
- His **relationship with the Sufi saint Sheikh Nizam ud din Aulia was not cordial**.
- It is believed that Jauna Khan treacherously killed his father and ascended the throne with the title Muhammad bin Tughlaq in c. 1325 CE.

Muhammad Bin Tughlaq/Jauna Khan (c. 1325 – 1351 CE)

- He was a very attractive character in the history of medieval India owing to his ambitious schemes and novel experiments. His enterprises and novel experiments ended in miserable failures.
- He was **very tolerant in religious matters**.
- He **maintained diplomatic relations with far off countries** like Egypt, China and Iran. Contemporary writers like **Isami, Barani and Ibn Battutah** were unable to give a correct picture about his personality.

- **Ibn Batuta (author of Safarnama Rehla)** visited India during this period (c. 1334 CE) and was appointed **Qazi at Delhi** for a period of eight years.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq was the only Delhi Sultan who had received a comprehensive **literary, religious and philosophical education**. He introduced many reforms:
- **Transfer of Capital** – Muhammad bin Tughlaq wanted to make Devagiri his second capital so that he might be able to control South India better. In **1327**, he made extensive preparations for the transfer of royal household and the ulemas and Sufis from Delhi to Devagiri, which was renamed as **Daulatabad**. When they resisted the Sultan enforced his orders ruthlessly and caused great hardship of the population of Delhi. The distance between these two places was more than 1500 kilometres. Many people died during the rigorous journey in the summer. After two years, the Sultan abandoned Daulatabad and asked them to return to Delhi.
- **Token Currency** – In **1329-30**, Muhammad bin Tughlaq introduced a token currency. There was a shortage of silver throughout the world in the fourteenth century.
- **Kublai Khan issued paper money** in China. In the same manner, Muhammad bin Tughlaq issued copper coins at par with the value of the silver tanka coins. But he was not able to prevent forging the new coins.
- The **goldsmiths began to forge the token coins** on a large scale. Soon the new coins were not accepted in the markets.
- Finally, Muhammad bin Tughlaq stopped the circulation of token currency and promised to exchange silver coins for the copper coins. Many people exchanged the new coins but the treasury became empty. According to the **Barani**, the heap of copper coins remained lying on roadside in Tughlaqabad.
- **Taxation in Doab** – The failure of the above two experiments resulted in a huge loss of money. In order to improve the financial condition, Muhammad bin Tughlaq increased the land revenue on the farmers of the doab land between the Ganga and Yamuna rivers. It was an excessive and arbitrary step on the farmers. A severe famine struck the region at that time which made the farmers revolt. However, the harsh steps taken by Muhammad bin Tughlaq crushed the revolt.
- **Agricultural Reforms** – He launched a scheme by which **takkavi loans** (loans for cultivation) were given to the farmers to buy seeds and to extend cultivation. He set up a separate department for agriculture, **Diwan-i-amir-Kohi**. A model farm under the state was created in an area of 64 square miles for which the government spent around seventy lakh tankas. This experiment was further continued by Firoz Tughlaq.

Revolts

- The latter part of Muhammad bin Tughlaq's reign witnessed a spate of rebellions by the nobles and provincial governors. The rebellion of **Hasan Shah** resulted in the establishment of the Madurai Sultanate.
- In **1336**, the Vijayanagar kingdom was **founded by two brothers Hari Har and Bukka**.
- In **1347**, Bahamani kingdom was established. The governors of Oudh, Multan and Sind revolted against the authority of Muhammad bin Tughlaq.
- In Gujarat Taghi rose in revolt against the Sultan who spent nearly three years in chasing him. Muhammad bin Tughlaq's health became worse and he died in 1351.
- According to **Baduani**, the Sultan was freed from his people and the people from the Sultan. According to **Barani**, Muhammad bin Tughlaq was a mixture of opposites. His reign marked the beginning of the process of its decline.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq died in c.1351 CE due to the worsening of his health condition.

Firoz Shah Tughlaq (c. 1351 – 1388 CE)

- After the death of Muhammad bin Tughlaq in c.1351 CE, **Firoz Shah Tughlaq** was chosen as the Sultan by the nobles.
- He appointed **Khan-i-Jahan Maqbal**, a Telugu Brahmin convert as wazir (Prime Minister). He helped the Sultan in his administration and maintained the prestige of the Sultanate during this period.
- After ascending the throne, he focussed on strengthening his position over north India instead of claiming his authority over south India and Deccan. He led two expeditions to **Bengal** which were unsuccessful and as a result, Bengal became free from the control of the Delhi Sultanate.
- Firoz Shah Tughlaq also attacked **Jajnagar (modern Orissa)** and collected large booty from the temples (such as the Puri Jagannath temple). He also marched against **Nagarkot (Nepal)** and made its ruler pay tributes.
- During this campaign, Firoz Shah collected 1300 Sanskrit manuscripts from the **Jwalamukhi temple library** and Arizuddin Khan translated these into the Persian language. Firoz Shah then marched against **Thatta (Sindh region)** and crushed a rebellion there.

Administrative Reforms

- He ran his administration in accordance with the advice of the ulemas. He pleased the nobles and assured hereditary succession to their properties. Thus, the **iqta system was revived** and was also made hereditary. Firoz extended the principle of hereditary to army as well.
- He levied taxes as per the teachings of Islam. **Jiziya was imposed on non-Muslims and become a separate tax** (earlier it was part of land revenue). Firuz refused to exempt the brahmins from the payment of jiziya. Only women, children, the disabled and indigent who had no means of livelihood were exempt from it.
- He was the **first sultan to impose an irrigation tax**. But at the same time, he also built a number of irrigation canals and wells. The longest canal was about 200 km in length from Sutlej to Hansi. Another canal was between **Yamuna and Hissar**.
- During his reign, there were around 1200 fruit gardens in and around Delhi generating more revenue.
- He developed royal factories called **karkhanas** in which thousands of slaves were employed. He also increased the number of slaves by capturing the defeated soldiers and young persons. There were around one lakh eighty thousand slaves during his reign.
- **New towns (around 300)** were built during his reign. The famous one **being Firozabad near Red Fort (now called Firoz Shah Kotla)**.
- Monuments like **Qutb Minar and Jama Masjid were repaired** and **Ashokan pillars from Meerut and Topara were brought to Delhi** during his reign.
- **Diwan-i-Khairat**, a new department was established to support orphans and widows.
- Free hospitals like **Dar-ul-Shifa** and marriage bureaus for poor Muslims were also established.
- Firoz patronised scholars like **Barani who wrote Tarikh-i-Firoz Shah**, and **Fatawa-i-Jahandari** and **Khwaja Abdul Malik Islami who wrote Futah-us- Sulatin**.
- He himself authored the book, **Futuhat-e-Firozshahi**.
- Firoz Shah Tughlaq died in c. **1388 CE** and after that, the struggle for power between the Sultan and nobles started again. His successors (like Muhammad Khan, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq Shah II, Abu Bakr Shah, Nasiruddin Muhammad) had to face the rebellions of the slaves created by Firoz.

- In the following years, the Delhi Sultanate disintegrated and many provinces like **Gujarat and Malwa declared independence**. The **invasion of Timur in c. 1398 CE**, further aggravated the situation.
- **Timur** was a Mongol leader of Central Asia, head of **Chagatai Turks**. His kingdom stretched from **lower Volga to river Indus**, included modern Turkey, Afghanistan, Transoxiana, Iran, and portions of Punjab. When Timur entered Delhi there was barely any opposition. He sacked Delhi for three days killing thousands of people and gathering huge wealth.
- He **withdrew from India in c. 1399 CE** and his invasion gave a death blow to the Tughlaq dynasty.

→ SAYYID DYNASTY

Khizr Khan (c. 1414 – 1421 CE)

- Before Timur left India, he appointed **Khizr Khan as governor of Multan**. He captured Delhi and founded the Sayyid dynasty in c. 1414 CE.
- He **did not adopt the title of Sultan** and was content with **Rayat-i-Ala**.
- He is considered to be an important ruler of the Sayyid dynasty. He tried to consolidate the Delhi Sultanate but in vain. He died in c. 1421 CE.
- Khizr Khan was succeeded by his son **Mubarak Shah (c. 1421 – 1433 CE)**.

Muhammad Shah (c. 1434 – 1443 CE)

- Muhammad Shah who succeeded Mubarak Shah was always busy acting against conspirators and gradually lost control over his nobles.
- Muhammad Shah died in c. 1445 CE and was succeeded by his son Alam Shah.

Alam Shah (c. 1445 – 1451 CE)

- He was the weakest amongst all Sayyid princes and proved to be incompetent.
- His wazir, **Hamid Khan invited Bahlul Lodhi** to take charge of the army. Alam Shah realised that it would be difficult to continue as a ruler, so he retired to Badaun.

→ LODHI DYNASTY

- The Lodhis/Lodis were the last ruling dynasty of the Sultanate period and the **first to be headed by the Afghans**, who ruled over Sirhind when the Sayyids ruled in India.

Bahlol Lodhi (c. 1451 – 1489 CE)

- He founded the Lodhi dynasty.
- In c. 1476 CE, he **defeated the sultan of Jaunpur** and annexed it to Delhi Sultanate. He also brought the ruler of Kalpi and Dholpur under the suzerainty of Delhi.
- He **annexed the Sharqui dynasty** and introduced **Bahlol copper coins**.
- He died in c. 1489 CE and was succeeded by his son, Sikander Lodhi.

Sikander Lodhi (c. 1489 – 1517 CE)

- He was the greatest of the three Lodhi sovereigns. He brought the whole of Bihar under his control and many Rajput chiefs were defeated. He attacked Bengal and forced its ruler to conclude a treaty with him and extended his kingdom from Punjab to Bihar.
- He was a good administrator, he **built roads and many irrigation facilities** were provided for the benefit of the peasantry.
- He introduced the **Gazz-i-Sikandari**, a new measurement yardstick and a system of auditing of accounts.
- In c. **1504 CE**, he founded **Agra** and wrote Persian verses under the name **Gulrakhi**.

Ibrahim Lodhi (c. 1517 – 1526 CE)

- Sikander Lodhi was succeeded by his eldest son, Ibrahim Lodhi who was an arrogant and repressive ruler. He insulted his nobles in the court and the ones who revolted were put to death.
- **Daulat Khan Lodhi**, the governor of Punjab was humiliated and disaffection between king and courtier became very common during his reign. Greatly displeased by the attitude of Ibrahim Lodhi, **Daulat Khan Lodhi invited Babur to invade India**.
- Babur marched against Delhi, **defeated and killed Ibrahim Lodhi in the First Battle of Panipat in c. 1526 CE**. The Afghan kingdom thus lasted for only seventy-five years.
- Thus, the Sultanate of Delhi which had its birth on the **battlefield of Tarain (c. 1192 CE)**, ended just a few miles away on the **battlefield of Panipat (c. 1526 CE)**.

→ DELHI SULTANATE ADMINISTRATION

- The effective administrative system under the Delhi Sultanate made a great impact on the Indian provincial kingdoms and later on the Mughal administrative system. At its peak, the Delhi Sultanate controlled regions as far south as Madurai.
- The Turkish ruler **Mahmud of Ghazni was the first to adopt the title of Sultan**. The Delhi Sultanate was an Islamic State with its religion as Islam.
- The **sultans were considered to be the representatives of the Caliph**. The name of the Caliph was included in the **khutba (prayer) and also inscribed on their coins**. This practice was even followed by Balban, who called himself “the shadow of God”.
- Iltutmish, Muhammad Bin Tughlaq and Feroz Tughlaq obtained a ‘**mansur**’ (**letter of investiture**) from the Caliph.
- The ultimate authority for the legal, military & political activities was with the Sultan. All the Sultan’s sons had an equal claim to the throne since there was no unambiguous succession law at the time.
- Iltutmish had even nominated his daughter Razia over his sons. However, such nominations had to be accepted by the nobles. At times, the Ulemas also played a pivotal role in getting a favourable public opinion. Nevertheless, military might was the chief factor when it came to succession.

Central Administration

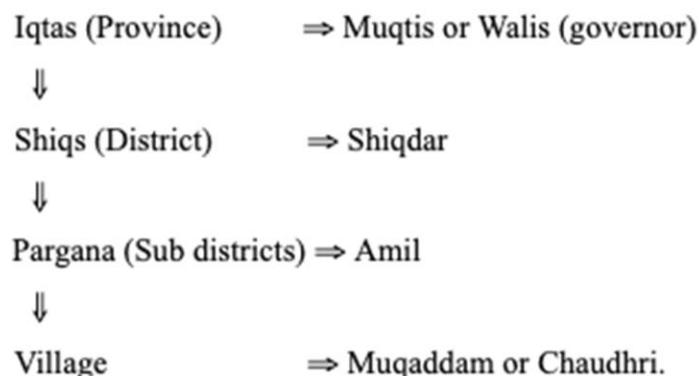
- There were many departments and officials who helped the Sultan in administration.
- The **Naib** was the **most influential post** and virtually enjoyed all the powers of the Sultan. He had control over all the other departments.

- The post of **Wazir** was next to the **Naib** and he headed the finance department known as the **Diwan-i-Wizarat**. An Auditor-General for examining expenditure and an Accountant General for checking income worked under the Wazir. The period of wazir-ship of Feroz Shah Tughlaq Khan-i-Jahan is generally considered as the high watermark period of the Wazir's influences.
- Diwan-i- Ariz** was the **military department** that was commanded by the **Ariz-i-Mumalik**. He would recruit the soldiers and administer the military department. However, Sultan himself acted as the **Commander-in-chief of the army**. The efficient army helped in containing the Mongol invasions along with the Decan expansion. The Turks also had a large number of properly trained elephants for war purposes. The **cavalry was given prime importance** and was considered more prestigious.
- The **department of religious affairs, Diwan-i-Risalat** dealt with pious foundations and granted stipends to deserving scholars and men of piety. This department granted funds for the construction of madrasas, tombs and mosques. It was headed by **Chief Sadr** who also **functioned as Chief Qazi**, the head of the judicial system. Other judges and Qazis were appointed in different parts of the Sultanate.
- Sharia or Muslim personal law was followed in civil matters.
- The **Hindus were governed by their own personal law and their cases were dispensed by the village panchayat**. The criminal law was dictated by the rules and regulations established by the Sultans.
- Diwan-i-Insha** was the **department of correspondence**. All the correspondence between the ruler and the sovereigns of other states as well as with his junior officials was managed by this department.

Diwan-i-Risalat	Department of Foreign Affairs	In charge of foreign affairs and dealing with diplomatic correspondences
Diwan-i-arz	Department of Military	Responsible for maintaining the royal army and recruiting troops. This department was introduced by Balban.
Diwan-i-Ishtiaq	Department of pensions	In charge of pensions
Diwan-i-Mustakhraj	Department of arrears	This was the department of revenue
Diwan-i-kohi	Department of agriculture	In charge of managing the agricultural activities in the kingdom. This department was created by Muhammad Bin Tughlaq.
Diwan-i-insha	Department of correspondence	In charge of the royal correspondence and the regulations set by the Sultans were the basis of law
Diwan-i-Bandagan	Department of slaves	In charge of slaves
Diwan-i-Qaza	Department of justice	Managing justice in the empire
Diwan-i-Khairat	Department of charity	In charge of charity

Provincial Government

- **Iqtas**, the provinces under the Delhi Sultanate were initially under the dominion of the nobles.
- **Muqtis or Walis** was the name given to the governors of the provinces and were responsible for maintaining law and order and collecting the land revenue.
- The provinces were further **divided into Shiqs**, which was under the control of the **Shiqdar**.
- The **Shiqs** were further divided into **Pargana**, comprising a number of villages and was headed by the **Amil**.
- The village remained the basic unit of administration and its headman was called **Chaudhri or Muqaddam**.
- **Patwari** was the village accountant.



→ DELHI SULTANATE ECONOMY

- Under the Delhi Sultanate, certain land reforms were introduced in the revenue department. The lands were categorised into three classes-
 - **Iqta land** – the lands which were allotted to the officials as iqta instead of payment for their services.
 - **Khalisa land** – it was directly under the control of the Sultan and the revenue generated was utilised for maintaining the royal court and royal household.
 - **Inam land** – it was allotted to religious institutions or religious leaders.
- The farmers paid **1/3rd of their produce as land revenue** and sometimes even half of the produce. They also had to pay other taxes and lived miserable lives.
- However, Sultans like **Muhammad Bin Tughlaq and Firoz Tughlaq** provided better irrigation facilities and also **takkavi loans** which helped in the increased agricultural production. They also promoted the cultivation of crops like wheat rather than barley.
- A separate agriculture department, **Diwan-i-Kohi** was set up by **Muhammad Bin Tughlaq**. Firoz Tughlaq promoted the growth of the horticulture sector.
- A number of **cities and towns** had grown during this period which led to rapid urbanisation. The important cities were – **Multan, Lahore** (north-west), **Anhilwara, Cambay, Broach** (west), **Lakhnauti and Kara** (east), **Jaunpur, Daulatabad and Delhi**. Delhi was the largest city.
- A large number of items were exported to **the Persian Gulf countries and West Asia and also to Southeast Asian countries**.
- Overseas trade was dominated by **Khurasanis (Afghan Muslims)** and **Multanis (mostly Hindus)**.

- Inland trade was under the control of **Gujarati, Marwari and Muslim Bohra merchants**. These merchants were rich and lived luxurious lives.
- Roads were built and maintained for facilitating smooth transport and communication. The royal roads were especially kept in good shape. In addition to the royal road from **Peshawar to Sonargaon**, Muhammad Bin Tughlaq built a road to **Daulatabad**. Sarais or rest houses were constructed on the highways for the benefit of the travellers.
- During the Delhi Sultanate, the **silk and the cotton textile industry thrived**. The introduction of **sericulture** on a large scale made India less reliant on other countries for the import of raw silk. **Paper** was widely used from the 14th and 15th centuries which led to the growth of the paper industry. Other crafts like **carpet weaving, leather making and metal crafts** also flourished due to the rise in their demand.
- The goods needed by the Sultan and his household were supplied by the **royal karkhanas**. Expensive articles made of gold and silver were produced by the royal karkhanas. The nobles were paid well and they copied the lifestyle of the Sultans and lived a pleasurable life.
- The **system of coinage** had also boomed during the Delhi Sultanate. Several types of **tankas were issued by Iltutmish**.
- During the Khalji rule, one tanka was divided into 48 jitals and 50 jitals during the Tughlaq rule.
- After the south Indian conquests by Alauddin Khalji, **gold coins or dinars became popular**. **Copper coins were fewer in number** and dateless. Muhammad Bin Tughlaq experimented with token currency and also issued different types of gold & silver coins. The coins were minted at different places. At least twenty-five different types of gold coins were issued by him.
- The Turks popularised a number of crafts and techniques like the use of **iron stirrup, use of armour** (for both the rider and the horse), improvement of **Rahat** (Persian wheel which helped in lifting the water from deeper levels), the spinning wheel and an improved loom for carpet weaving, use of superior mortar, which helped to erect magnificent buildings based on the arch and dome, etc.

→ DELHI SULTANATE SOCIETY

- There were hardly any changes in the structure of the Hindu society during the Delhi Sultanate. The Brahmins continued to enjoy the highest place in the social strata.
- The **severest restrictions were placed on mingling** with the chandalas and other outcasts.
- During this period, the practice of keeping women in seclusion and asking them to veil their faces in the presence of outsiders (**purdah system**) became prevalent among the upper-class Hindus (particularly in North India).
- The Arabs and Turks brought the **purdah system into India and it became a symbol of the higher classes** in society.
- The **practice of sati was widely prevalent** in different regions of the country.
- **Ibn Batuta mentions that permission from the Sultan** had to be taken for the performance of sati.
- During the Sultanate period, the **Muslim society remained divided into ethnic and racial groups**. The Afghans, Iranians, Turks and Indian Muslims developed as exclusive groups and rarely married each other. Converts from the lower sections of Hindus were also discriminated against.

- For the Hindu subjects, from the time of the Arab invasion of Sindh, they had been given the status of **zimmis or protected people** i.e, those who accepted the Muslim rule and agreed to pay a tax called jaziya.
- At first, jaziya was collected along with land revenue.** Later, **Firoz Tughlaq made jaziya a separate tax** and levied it on Brahmins also, who were earlier exempted from the jaziya.
- Slavery had existed in India for a long time, however, it thrived during this period. There existed **slave markets for men and women**. Slaves were generally bought for domestic service, for company or for their special skills. Firoz Shah Tughlaq had about 1,80,000 slaves.

→ DELHI SULTANATE- ART, ARCHITECTURE, LITERATURE

DELHI SULTANATE – ART AND ARCHITECTURE



Ilutmish tomb with True Arch



Tomb of Tughlaq Showing Sloping Walls

- New architectural forms and styles were introduced in India during the medieval period. The synthesis of Indian and Islamic architectural features led to emergence of Indo-islamic architecture.
- The **arch and dome** were new architectural additions of the period.
- The **use of lime-mortar** in the construction of buildings and houses altered the building techniques
- The **development of the true arch** was important feature of the architectural style of the period.
- In the beginning, they converted temples and other structures into mosques. For example, the **Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque near Qutub Minar** in Delhi was built by using the materials obtained from Hindu and Jain temples.
- With the arrival of artisans from West Asia the arch and dome began to show up with precision and perfection. Gradually local artisans also acquired the skill.
- The **tomb of Balban was adorned with the first true arch** and the **Alai Darwaza built by Alaud-din Khalji as a gateway to the Quwwatul-Islam Mosque** is adorned with the first true dome.
- Domes, arches, lofty towers, minarets, Islamic script were introduced by the Turks.

- The **dome** is the prominent feature of the mosques in contrast to the shikhara of Hindu temples.
- Delhi Sultans had a great taste for architecture. The architecture was a blend of Indian and Islamic styles.
- **Qutub Minar** is a towering 73m high tower constructed by Qutub-ud-din Aibak and completed by Iltutmish in memory of the Sufi saint Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- The **palace complex of Tughlaqabad** was built during the reign of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq.
- Muhammad Bin Tughlaq built the **tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq** on a high platform. He also built **Jahanpanah**, one of the cities of Delhi.
- **Firoz Shah Tughlaq built Hauz Khas**, a pleasure resort and also built the **Feroz Shah Kotla fort**. The Tughlaq rulers started building the tombs on an elevated platform.
- Tughlaqs went for introduction of innovative features in architecture also, such as
 - “batter” or sloping walls
 - use of stone rubble as the principle building material
 - a new type of arch called the **four centred arch**
 - the emergence of the **pointed dome**
 - the introduction of an octagonal plan of tomb building.
- The **Lodhi Gardens** in Delhi is an example of the architecture of the Lodhis.
- Lodi dynasty introduced the **double dome architecture** in India.
- A double dome is **built of two layers**. There is one layer inside which **provides ceiling to the interior of the building**. The **other layer is the outer one which crowns the buildings**.
- The devices of double dome enable the ceiling inside to be placed lower and in better relation to the Interior space it covers.
- This is done without disturbing the proportions and the effect of elevation of the exterior. The method of making double dome was practised in east Asia for quite some time before it was imported into India.
- The **tomb of Sikandar Lodi was the first example with a double dome**, lifting its height in order to get a more attractive outward appearance.

DELHI SULTANATE MUSIC

- The **sarangi and the rabab**, new musical instruments were introduced during this period.
- Also, new ragas like **ghora and sanam** were introduced by **Amir Khusrau**. He is also credited with **fusing the Iranian and Indian musical systems to create Qawwali**.
- He is credited with the creation of a new musical instrument, the **sitar** that was a combination of the Indian vina and the Iranian tambura.
- Amir kusrav was the first to describe Kashmir as Eden on earth.
- He proclaimed himself as tuti-i-hind or parrot of India.
- He was contemporary of **Jalaluddin Khalji, Alauddin Khalji, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq**.
- He witnessed rule of eight sultans.
- **Ragadarpan**, the Indian classical work, was translated into Persian during the rule of Firoz Shah Tughlaq.
- **Pir Bhodan was a Sufi saint** who was regarded as the greatest musician of his age.
- New musical instruments such as **sarangi and rabab** were introduced during this period.

- Raja Man Singh of Gwalior was a great patron of music and encouraged the composition of the great work on music called **Man Kautuhal**.

DELHI SULTANATE LITERATURE

- The Delhi Sultans gave huge importance to literature and showed more interest in the progress of Persian literature.
- Apart from poetry and theology, history writing was also promoted.
- The most renowned historians of this time were **Minhaj-us-Siraj, Zia-ud-din Barani, Hasan Nizami and Shams Siraj**.
- **Tabaqat-i-Nasari** was authored by **Minhaj-us-Siraj** which gives a general account of the history of Muslim dynasties up to c. 1260 CE.
- The history of the Tughlaq dynasty, **Tarikh-i-Firoz** was written by **Barani**.
- Prince Muhammad, the eldest son of Sultan Balban was a great patron of scholars and provided protection to **two great scholars of his time i.e, Amir Khusrau and Amir Hasan**.
- Amir Khusrau has been regarded as the greatest Persian poet of his age.
- He created a new **style of Persian poetry called Sabaq-i-Hind (Indian style)**.
- His important works include **Khazain-ul-Futuh, Tughlaqnama and Tarikh-i-Alai**.
- He was a great singer and was given the title ‘Parrot of India’.
- Translation of certain Sanskrit books was done into the Persian language during this period. **Zia Nakshabi** was the first to translate Sanskrit stories into the Persian language.
- The book **Tutu Nama** or the Book of the Parrot was first translated into Turkish and then to many European languages.
- **Abu Bakr's Chachanamh** is the first geographical treatise deals with conquest of Sindh.
- The famous book **Rajatarangani** written by **Kalhana** was translated into Persian in the era of Kashmiri ruler Zain-ul-Abideen.
- In the Arabic language, **Al-Beruni's Kitab-ul-Hind** is the most important work.
- Al-Beruni or Alberuni was an Arabic and Persian scholar patronized by Mahmud of Ghazni.
- He learnt Sanskrit and translated two Sanskrit works into Arabic.
- He was impressed by the Upanishads and Bhagavad Gita.
- A large number of scholars flourished at the courts of provincial rulers as well. **Chand Bardai**, a Hindi poet, was the author of Prithviraj Rasau.
- **Nusrat Shah** patronised the translation of Mahabharata into Bengali.
- **Krittivasa** prepared a Bengali translation of the Ramayana from Sanskrit.
- A new language Urdu emerged during **14th century**.

→ VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE

- The foundation of the Vijayanagara state towards the middle of the 14th century is generally attributed to a group of five brothers, namely, **Bukka, Harihara, Kampana, Mudappa and Marappa**.
- The founding figures of the kingdom are also known as the **Sangamas, after their father's name**.

- The kingdom takes its name from its **capital Vijayanagara, ‘the city of victory’**, which was built on the southern bank of the **River Tungabhadra**.
- To begin with the Sangamas had control over only a small area comprising **Gutty and its surroundings**. According to the traditions, they could succeed in building up a vast empire with the blessings of the **saint Vidyaranya**. However, it has been observed by recent historians that Vidyaranya emerged as an important personage on the Vijayanagara scene only several decades after the empire had been founded.
- This does not minimize the importance of the role played by cultural leaders in mobilising popular support for the rulers.
- In the initial years of the kingdom, the Sangamas were involved in incessant fights against not only ‘Muhammadans’ but also ‘Hindu’ rulers.
- They defeated **Rajanarayana Sambuvaraya in 1357**, won the war against the **Sultan of Madurai in 1370** and thus, by about 1377, at the time of the death of Bukka I, Vijayanagara was the largest regional kingdom in the whole of south India ever to have existed.
- Bukka’s successors continued to **extend the empire to the north east** by fighting the **Kondavidu Reddies of the coastal Andhra and the Velamas of Warangal** and even the **Gajapati kings of Orissa**. Their fight with the Gajapati’s continued for about a century. These military operations were possible because Vijayanagara could mobilize resources which were essential for the maintenance of the army and for the project of expansion.
- The history of Vijayanagar Empire constitutes an important chapter in the history of India. **Four dynasties – Sangama, Saluva, Tuluva and Aravidu** – ruled Vijayanagar from A.D. **1336 to 1672**. The sources for the study of Vijayanagar are varied such as literary, archaeological and numismatics.
- **Krishnadevaraya’s Amukthamalyada, Gangadevi’s Maduravijayam and Allasani Peddanna’s Manucharitam** are some of the indigenous literature of this period.
- Many foreign travelers visited the Vijayanagar Empire and their accounts are also valuable. The **Moroccan traveler, Ibn Battuta, Venetian traveler Nicolo de Conti, Persian traveler Abdur Razzak and the Portuguese traveler Domingo Paes** were among them who left valuable accounts on the socio-economic conditions of the Vijayanagar Empire.
- The copper plate inscriptions such as the **Srirangam copper plates of Devaraya II** provide the genealogy and achievements of Vijayanagar rulers. The Hampi ruins and other monuments of Vijayanagar provide information on the cultural contributions of the Vijayanagar rulers. The numerous coins issued by the Vijayanagar rulers contain figures and legends explaining their titles and achievements.

Harihara and Bukka (c. 1336 – 1377 CE)

- The Vijayanagara kingdom was founded by Harihara and Bukka who belonged to a family of five brothers.
- According to a legend, they had been the **feudatories of the Kakatiyas of Warangal** and later became ministers in the kingdom of Kampili in modern Karnataka. When Kampili was overrun by Muhammad bin Tughlaq for giving refuge to a Muslim rebel, Harihara and Bukka were imprisoned and converted to Islam and appointed to deal with the rebellion there. Later they forsook their new master and returned to their old Hindu faith **at the initiative of saint Vidyaranya**. The two brothers founded a new city, Vijayanagara (city of victory), on the south bank of river Tungabhadra.
- The dissolution of the Hoysala kingdom enabled Harihara and Bukka to expand their tiny principality. **By c. 1346 CE**, the whole of the Hoysala kingdom had passed into the hands of the Vijayanagara rulers. In this struggle, they were aided by their brothers and by their

relations who took up the administration of the areas conquered by their efforts. The Vijayanagara kingdom was, thus, a kind of cooperative commonwealth at first.

- Bukka succeeded his brother to the throne of Vijayanagara in c. 1356 CE and ruled till c. 1377 CE.
- The rising power of the Vijayanagara empire brought it into conflict with many powers both in the south as well as in the north. In the south, its main rivals were the Sultans of Madurai. By c. 1377 CE, the **Sultanate of Madurai** had been completely wiped out.

Harihara II (c. 1377 – 1406 CE)

- The Vijayanagara empire undertook the policy of expansion towards the **eastern seacoast under Harihara II**. He extended his empire through a series of conflicts against the **Reddis** of Kondavidu for the control of Andhra between Nellore and Kalinga.
- Harihara II conquered the Addanki and Srisailam areas as well as most of the territory **between the peninsula to the south of the Krishna river**, which eventually brought him in confrontation with the **Velamas** to fight for Rachakonda (Telangana).
- There was alliance of the Bahmani kingdom and Warangal. It lasted for over 50 years and was a major factor in the inability of Vijayanagara to overrun the **Tungabhadra doab**, or to stem the Bahmani offensive in the area.
- Harihara II was able to maintain his position in the face of the Bahmani-Warangal alliance. His greatest success was in wresting **Belgaum and Goa** in the west from the Bahmani kingdom. He also sent an expedition to **north Sri Lanka**.

Deva Raya I (c. 1406 – 1422 CE)

- Early in his reign, there was a renewed fight for the Tungabhadra doab. He was defeated by the Bahmani ruler, Firoz Shah and had to pay a huge indemnity.
- He also married his daughter to the Sultan. However, this peace was short-lived and later Deva Raya I entered into an alliance with the ruler of Warangal which shifted the balance of power in the Deccan towards Deva Raya I.
- In c. 1420 CE, **Firoz Shah** invaded Pangal which had been taken by Vijayanagara but this time Deva Raya I inflicted a shattering defeat on Firoz Shah Bahmani. By c. 1422 CE, Deva Raya I annexed the territory up to **Krishna-Tungabhadra doab including Pangal**.
- **Deva Raya I constructed a dam across the Tungabhadra so that he could bring canals into the city to reduce the shortage of water.**
- He also built a **dam on the River Haridra** for irrigation purposes.
- He was a secular ruler in matters of administration and had thousands of Muslims in his army.
- **Nicolo Conti, an Italian traveller and Nikitin, a Russian merchant** who authored the book ‘Voyage to India’ visited the kingdom during his reign.
- He patronised Kannada literature and architecture.

Deva Raya II (c. 1425 – 1446 CE)

- He is considered to be the greatest ruler of the Sangama dynasty. In order to strengthen his army, he reorganized it and incorporated many features of the armies of the Delhi Sultanate.
- His large cavalry and standing army made Vijayanagara empire a more centralized polity than any of the Hindu kingdoms in the south.
- **Deva Raya II crossed the Tungabhadra river in c. 1443 CE** and tried to recover Mudkal, Bankapur, etc which were south of the Krishna river and had been lost to the Bahmani

rulers earlier. Three hard battles were fought, but in the end, the two sides had to agree to the existing frontiers.

- According to **Nuniz**, a Portuguese traveller of the 16th century, the kings of Quilon, Sri Lanka, Pulicat, Pegu and Tenasserim (in Burma and Malaya) paid tributes to Deva Raya II.
- The Persian traveller Abdur Razzaq visited Vijayanagara during the reign of Deva Raya II. He considers Vijayanagara to be one of the splendid cities in the world.
- Deva Raya was a man of letters and authored **Sobagina Sone and Amaruka in the Kannada language**, and **Mahanataka Sudhanidhi in the Sanskrit language**. He also wrote a **commentary on the Brahmasutra**.
- He was titled '**Gaja Betegara**' which literally means 'hunter of elephants' that explained his addiction to hunting elephants or a metaphor referring to his victories against enemies who were as strong as elephants.
- **Hazara Rama temple** was built Devaraya II.
- The next dynasty, Saluva was founded by Saluva Narasimha which reigned for a short period from c. 1486 – 1509 CE.

→ TULUVA DYNASTY

- **Vira Narasimha Raya (c. 1505 – 1509 CE)** was the founder of Tuluva dynasty was founded by Vira Narasimha Raya.

Krishna Deva Raya (c. 1509 – 1529 CE)

- He is considered to be the greatest of the Vijayanagara rulers. He was known as **Andhra Pitama, Andhra Bhoja** and **Abhinava Bhoja**.
- The Bahmani Sultanate forces were decisively defeated in the **Battle of Diwani**.
- He invaded **Raichur Doab** (*between Krishna and Tungbhadra Rivers*) which resulted in the confrontation with the **Sultan of Bijapur, Ismail Adil Shah**.
- Krishna Deva Raya defeated him and captured the **city of Raichur in c. 1520 CE**.
- Krishna Deva Raya's **Orissa campaign** was also successful. He defeated the **Gajapathi ruler Prataparudra** and conquered the whole of Telangana. He had friendly relations with the Portuguese and **Albuquerque sent his ambassadors to Krishna Deva Raya**.
- He **himself was a Vaishnavaite** but showed respect for all faiths.
- Krishna Deva Raya was known for his intellectual abilities and was a great patron of art and literature. Krishna Deva Raya himself authored a Telugu work, **Amukthamalyadha and Sanskrit works, Jambavati Kalyanam and Ushaparinayam**.
- His royal court was adorned with eight eminent scholars known as '**Ashta diggajas**'.
- During the period of Krishnadevaraya, the **Telugu literature** reached its peak.
- The **Ashtadiggajas gave Prabandha**, which was considered to be a new form of Telugu literary style its present shape.
- **Allasani Peddanna** was the greatest scholar and was known as **Andhrakavita Pitamaga**. His important works include **Manucharitam** and **Harikathasaram**.
- **Pingali Suranna** and **Tenali Ramakrishna** were other renowned scholars.

- Tenali Ramakrishna who was known as “**vikatakavi**” served as the Vijayanagar king Krishnadevaraya’s personal counsellor.
- Telugu poet **Ramarajabhusanudu**, better known as **Bhattumurthi**, was also a well-known musician.
- Poets like **Tikkana** and **Potana** translated the Sanskrit books and epics without changing the stories from the original.
- He constructed the famous **Vittalaswamy** and **Krishna temples**. He also repaired many south Indian temples and built a large number of Rayagopurams or gateways to many important south Indian temples.
- He also built a new city called **Nagalapuram near Vijayanagar**.
- **Domingo Paes and Barbosa** visited during Krishnadevraya time.
- **Achyuta Deva Raya (c. 1529 – 1542 CE)**: During his reign, a Portuguese traveller **Fernao Nuniz** visited India. His son Venkata I succeeded him. He was a weak ruler and was murdered six months later.
- Then, Krishna Deva’s son **Sada Siva Raya** ascended the throne. Being a minor, the real power lay in the hands of **Aravidu Aliya Rama Raya**, son-in-law of Krishna Deva Raya (the word, Aliya means son-in-law in the Kannada language).
- **Rama Raya** was an efficient army general who led many successful campaigns during the reign of Krishna Deva Raya.

Sada Siva Raya (c. 1542 – 1570 CE)

- He was the **last ruler of the Tuluva dynasty**.
- The whole empire was run by Aliya Rama Raya and Sada Siva Raya acted merely as a puppet.
- Rama Raya tried to balance the Deccan powers by playing one against the other. He constantly changed sides to improve his position which prompted the Deccan states (Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda and Bidar except for Berar) to form an alliance.
- They combined to inflict a crushing defeat on the Vijayanagara armies at **Bannihatti in the Battle of Talaikotta (Talikota) in c. 1565 CE**. This battle is also called **Rakshasa Thangadi**. Rama Raya was imprisoned and immediately executed.
- Vijayanagara was looted and left in ruins. The Battle of Bannihatti is generally considered to mark the end of the Vijayanagara Empire.
- **Caesar Fredrick** visited Vijayanagara after the battle of Talaikotta. he was the most unfortunate of all the travellers who visited the Vijayanagara Empire because he visited it in the year 1567, 2 years after it was brought down to ruins. This traveller from Venice, Italy travelled in the East from 1563 to 1581 and left behind an account of social, economic and cultural life of people in India during that period.
- In his own words, the ruins of Vijayanagara were described as: "The Citie of BEZENEGER (Vijayanagara) is not altogether destroyed, yet the houses stand still, but emptie, and there is dwelling in them nothing, as is reported, but Tygres and other wild beasts."
- The Vijayanagara kingdom continued to exist under the **Aravidu dynasty** for about another century. The dynasty ruled from **Penukonda** and later from **Chandragiri** (near Tirupati).
- The last ruler of the kingdom was **Sri Ranga III (c. 1642 – 1646 CE)**.

VIJAYANAGARA KINGDOM ADMINISTRATION

- The king was the absolute authority in judicial, executive and legislative matters.

- Succession to the throne was largely based on the principle of heredity, **however, sometimes usurpation to the throne also occurred** (when Saluva Narasimha ended the Sangama dynasty and founded the Saluva dynasty).
- In the Vijayanagara kingdom, the king was advised by a council of ministers which consisted of the great nobles of the kingdom.
- The kingdom was divided into **rajyas or mandalam (provinces)**, below which were **nadu (district), sthala (sub-district) and grama (village)**.
- The **Chola traditions of village self-government** were considerably weakened under Vijayanagara rulers.
- The **Amara-Nayaka system** was prevalent in the Vijayanagara kingdom. This is similar to the iqta system of Delhi Sultanate.
- The **top-grade officers were known as Nayaks or Poligars or Palaiyagars**.
- At first, the royal princes served as the governors of the provinces. Later, persons belonging to vassal ruling families and nobles were also appointed as governors.
- The provincial governor enjoyed a good measure of autonomy, for example, they had the power to appoint their own officers, held their own courts and had their own armies. At times, they even issued their own coins, though in small denominations.
- The term for a governor depended largely on his abilities and strength. The governor also had the power to levy taxes or remit old ones. Each governor paid a fixed contribution in men and money to the central government.
- Land revenue, tributes and gifts from vassals and feudal chiefs, customs collected at the ports, taxes on various professions were the various sources of income to the government. Land revenue was generally fixed at one-sixth of the produce.

The Ayagar system

- It was an important feature of the village organization in Vijayanagar.
- According to this, **every village was a separate unit** and its affairs were conducted by a **team of 12 functionaries** who were collectively known as the '**ayagars**'.
- They were granted **tax-free lands (manyams)** which they were to enjoy in perpetuity for their services. Once granted, these ayagars had a hereditary right over their offices.
- The ayagars could also sell or mortgage their offices.

Army and Military Organisation

- The Vijayanagara army was well organized and quite efficient. It consisted of the **cavalry, artillery, infantry, and elephants**.
- The Vijayanagara rulers **imported high-quality horses from Arabia** and other Gulf regions.
- The **Malabar port** was the main centre of this trade and other luxury items.
- **Nayaks** were granted land in lieu of the services while the soldiers were usually paid in cash. These lands were called amaram.
- The Nayaka had the power to collect taxes in his area which was utilized in maintaining his army, elephants, horses and warfare weapons that he had to supply to the Vijayanagara ruler.
- The Nayakas sent tributes to the king annually and personally appeared in the courts with gifts to express their loyalty.
- The **growth of hereditary nayakships** tended to curb their freedom and initiative.

- In the 17th century, some of these Nayakas such as those of Tanjore and Madurai claimed independence and established their separate states. These states weakened the structure of the Vijayanagara kingdom contributing to the defeat of the Vijayanagara Empire in the battle of Talaikotta.

SOCIAL LIFE

- Ilasani Peddanna in his Manucharitam** refers the existence of four castes – Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas and Sudras - in the Vijayanagar society.
- Foreign travellers have left vivid accounts of the splendour of buildings and luxurious social life in the city of Vijayanagar.

- Paes** mentions the beautiful houses of the rich and the large number of their household servants.
- Nicolo Conti** refers to the prevalence of slavery. Mainly silk and cotton clothes were used.

- Gambling, wrestling, dancing, music and cockfighting were the means of entertainment among the masses.
- The **Sangama rulers were mainly Shaivites and Virupaksha** was their family deity while other dynasties were Vaishnavites.
- The Srivaishnavism of Ramanuja was very popular. However, all kings were tolerant towards other religions.

- Barbosa referred to the religious freedom** enjoyed by everyone. There were Muslims in the administration who were allowed to practise their religion and build mosques.

- Deva Raya II enrolled Muslims in his army** and also allotted lands to them.
- A large number of temples were built during this period and a number of festivals were celebrated. The Epics and the Puranas were popular among the masses.
- The position of women did not see any improvement.
- However, some of them were learned such as **Gangadevi**, wife of Kumarakampana, who wrote the famous work **Maduravijayam**.
- Hannamma** and **Thirumalamma** were the other two famous women poets.

- Nuniz mentions** that a large number of women were employed in the royal palaces as domestic servants, dancers and palanquin bearers.

- The attachment of dancing girls to temples was in practice. Paes refers to the flourishing devadasi system. Polygamy was prevalent among the royal families. Sati was honoured and Nuniz gives a description of it.

ECONOMIC CONDITION

- Agriculture** continued to be the chief occupation of the people. The Vijayanagar rulers provided a stimulus to its further growth by providing **irrigation facilities**. New tanks were built and dams were constructed across the rivers like Tunghabhadra.

- Nuniz refers to the excavation of canals.**

- There were **numerous industries** and they were organized into **guilds**. Metal workers and other craftsmen flourished during this period.
- Diamond mines** were located in **Kurnool and Anantapur district**.
- Vijayanagar was also a great centre of trade. The **chief gold coin was the varaha** but weights and measures varied from place to place.

- Inland, coastal and overseas trade led to the general prosperity. There were a number of seaports on the Malabar coast, the chief being **Cannanore**.
- Commercial contacts with Arabia, Persia, South Africa and Portugal on the west and with Burma, Malay peninsula and China on the east flourished.
- The **chief items of exports** were cotton and silk clothes, spices, rice, iron, saltpeter and sugar. The **imports** consisted of horses, pearls, copper, coral, mercury, China silk and velvet clothes. The art of shipbuilding had developed.
- Documents from Tamil country bear testimony to the increase in **markets (pettai), fairs (sandai)** thereby implying an increase in the local exchange networks.
- Compulsion was used to increase production of **cash crops** such as sugar, pepper etc. indicating linkage between local production and long distance trade, both inland and overseas.
- Travel accounts of **Chau Ju-Kua, Marco Polo and Iban Battuta** all document India's participation in the world trade. These travellers' accounts refer to the situation in the territories of Vijayanagara Kingdom too. They took notice of the development of interior urban centers whose consumption demands buoyed up the coastal emporia.
- Another stimulus for the trade and urbanization in the empire came from the **Brahmanical temple complexes** which functioned as pilgrim centers, military centers, political capitals and commercial centers.
- **Customs collections at major trade centers were let on rent agreements or gutta from powerful state level magnates- (Stein writer).**
- According to **Nuniz**, the Portuguese chronicler, the annual collection of customs from one of the gateways of Vijayanagara was rented for twelve thousand gold coins.
- **Nilakanta Sasthri** observes that the proportion of produce claimed as revenue varied from the traditional one sixth to as much as half the gross yield.
- In addition to the income from agriculture and trade, the Vijayanagara state collected taxes from **professionals and houses**.
- Fee for various kinds of licenses, transit and market dues and judicial fines were other sources of income of the state.

VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- ARCHITECTURE

- Vijayanagar architecture is a vibrant combination of the **Chalukya, Hoysala, Pandya, and Chola styles**, which evolved from prior empires in earlier centuries. It is also influenced by later **Deccan and Dravidian styles**.
- The Vijayanagara architecture mostly adopted the principles of the Dravidian style, but at the same time, it also had its unique features, which gave birth to a new style named the "**Provida style**"
- The Vijayanagar architecture introduced a **new tradition of using hard stones** compared to the earlier soft stones.
- Preferred for its **durability**, local **hard granite** was the building material of choice, as it had been for the Badami Chalukyas.
- Vijayanagar temples are surrounded by strong enclosures and characterized by ornate pillared **kalyanamandapa (marriage halls); tall rayagopurams** (carved monumental towers at the entrance of the temple) built of wood, brick, and stucco in the Chola style; and adorned with life-sized figures of gods and goddesses. This dravida style became popular during the reign of **Krishnadeva Raya** and is seen in South Indian temples constructed over the next two centuries.

- Vijayanagar temples are also known for their carved pillars , which depict **charging horses, figures from Hindu mythology, and yali (hippogryphs)**. Some of the larger temples are dedicated to a male deity , with a separate shrine intended for the worship of his female counterpart. Some famous temples exemplifying the Vijayanagar style include the **Virupaksha Temple at Hampi** and the **Hazara Rama temple of Deva Raya II**.
- The courtly architecture of Vijayanagar is generally made of mortar mixed with stone rubble and often shows secular styles with Islamic-influenced arches , domes , and vaults.
- The **Varadharaja and Ekamperanatha temples at Kanchipuram** speak about the grandeur of the Vijayanagara style of temple architecture.
- The **Raya Gopurams at Thiruvannamalai and Chidambaram** speak about the glorious epoch of Vijayanagar.
- They were continued by the Nayak rulers in the later period.
- The metal images of **Krishna Deva Raya and his queens** at Tirupati are examples of the casting of metal images.
- The Vijayanagara rulers also patronised music and dance.
- Languages like **Telugu, Sanskrit, Kannada and Tamil** thrived during this period. Sanskrit and Telugu literature witnessed great development.

VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- SCULPTURE

- The mingling of South Indian styles under the Vijayanagar Empire resulted in a richness not seen in earlier centuries, including a focus on reliefs and sculpture that surpassed that seen previously in India.
- **Soapstone**, which was soft and easily carved, was commonly used for reliefs and sculptures. To cover the unevenness of the stone, artists employed brightly painted plaster to smooth over and finish rough surfaces.
- Sculpture was integrally linked with architecture in the creation of Vijayanagar temples.
- **Large life-size figures** of men, women, gods, and goddesses adorn many Vijayanagara temples, and temple pillars often have engravings of charging horses or hippocryphs (yali) and other elements of Hindu mythology.
- **Temple pillars often have engravings of charging horses or hippocryphs (yali)**—horses standing on hind legs with their fore legs lifted and riders on their backs. The horses on some pillars stand seven to eight feet tall. On the other side of the pillar are often carvings from Hindu mythology.
- Another element of the Vijayanagar style is the carving and consecration of **large monolithic statues**, such as the **Sasivekalu Ganesha and Kadalekalu Ganesha at Hampi**; and the **Nandi bull in Lepakshi**.

VIJAYNAGARA EMPIRE- PAINTINGS

- The Vijayanagar school of painting was renowned for its **frescoes of Hindu mythological themes on temple walls and ceilings**.
- With the fall of the Vijayanagar empire after the Battle of Talikota in 1565 CE, the artists who were under royal patronage migrated to various other places such as **Mysore, Tanjore, and Surpur**.
- Vijayanagar art includes wall paintings such as the **Dashavatara (the Ten Avatars of Vishnu) and the Girijakalyana (the marriage of Parvati, Shiva's consort)** in the Virupaksha Temple at Hampi.

- The **Shivapurana murals (the Tales of Shiva)** at the Virabhadra temple at Lepakshi; and those at the Kamaakshi and Varadaraja temples at Kanchi.

Foreign Visitors of Vijayanagara Kingdom:

- **Ibn Bututa (1333-1347 A.D.)** — Moroccan traveller, who visited India during the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq. And came to Vijayanagar during the **reign of Harihara I**.
- **Nicolo Conti (1420-1421 A.D.)** — Venetian traveller, who gave a comprehensive account of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar.
- **Abdur Razzaq (1443-1444 A. D.)** — Persian traveller, who stayed at the court of the Zamorin at Calicut. He has given a vivid account of the Vijayanagar city, while describing the wealth and luxurious life of the king and the nobles.
- **Duarte Barbosa (1500-1516 A.D.)** — Portuguese traveller, who has given a valuable narrative of the government and the people of the Vijayanagar empire.
- **Domingos Paes (1520-1522 A.D)** — Portuguese traveller, who visited the court of Krishnadeva Raya.
- **Fernao Nuniz (1534-1537 A.D)** — Portuguese merchant, who wrote the history of the empire from its earliest days to the closing years of Achyutdeva Raya's reign.
- **Caesar Fredrick in 1567**

→ BAHMANI KINGDOM (1347-1526 A.D.)

- The kingdom originated due to the **revolt of the amirs of the Delhi Sultanate**.
- The **nobility played** an important role in the political sphere, especially, in the process of assumption of power by the ruler and providing legitimacy to the ruler.
- The **support of the nobility** was important for the king to assume and maintain power.
- The **Sufis and the ulema** also played an important role in legitimising state power through religious and philosophical ideology.
- After the establishment and consolidation of **Bahmani rule kingship** was confined to the royal house of the Bahmanis.
- Sultan ascended the throne through **either nomination by the entrenched king** in which **sometimes primogeniture** was followed or through a process of selection by the ruling king, nobles and theologians. At times when a **minor was declared as sultan the actual power was wielded by the nobility as regent of the king**.
- The Bahmani Kingdom made its appearance on the **political horizon of Deccan due to the revolts towards the end of the reign of Muhammad bin Tughlaq**. The sultan became suspicious of **amiran-i-sada posted in the Deccan**.
- He proclaimed himself the king of the Deccan under the **title Nasir-ud-din Shah**.
- An imperial army led by Muhammad himself rushed to Daulatabad and defeated the rebels and shut them up in the fort.
- Somehow, a few of them including the brothers of the newly appointed king managed to **escape to Gulbarga** under the leadership of **Hasan Gangu** who was also known as Zafar Khan.
- After three months Zafar Khan gathered an army and reached Daulatabad. Zafar Khan could easily defeat the imperial army and the **new king Nasir-ud-din** readily abdicated the throne

in favour of Zafar Khan who proclaimed himself sultan under the title **Alauddin Bahman Shah**.

- This was the beginning of the Bahmani line of Kings.
- **Area**
- The realm of the Bahmani kingdom comprised roughly of the Deccan and part of south India upto the Krishna river which was the northern border of the strong Vijayanagara state.
- At the height of its power, the Bahmani sultans held sway over a vast territory from the **river Tapti in the north and Krishna and Tungbhadrā in the South from Arabian Sea in the west to Orissa in the east**.
- **Golconda was an agricultural zone** where several food grains and cash crops were cultivated due to a well developed network of canals.
- **Weaving and craft industries flourished** in the region due to the encouragement and patronage extended by rulers of the region.
- Golconda was famous for a **particular variety of fabric and also for fine steel**.
- **Swords and arrowheads were exported from Golconda** to distant places as a result of the superior steel technology of the area.
- Above all **Golconda mines were famous for their diamonds**.
- Thus the realm of the sultans was to some extent rich in certain resources but it also comprised of arid zones with no yield of any kind. The economic resources of the region especially the **agrarian produce were not plentiful** and therefore for sustaining the kingdom wars had to be waged for resource mobilisation from rich tracts.
- The general trend of an **expansion of cultivation from the plains to the upland zones** was also an important feature of Bahmani period.

Source material about the Bahmani Kingdom

- **Futuh – us – Salatin by Isami** is the extant contemporary work on the history of the Bahmani Kingdom. After a **description of the Delhi Sultanate up to the time of Muhammad bin Tughlaq** the author writes about the foundation of the Bahmani Kingdom and the political disturbances in the Deccan. He gives valuable information on various aspects of history of the Deccan and south India.
- **Ferishta, whose name was Muhammad Kasim**, was perhaps the best known historian of the period. He wrote **Gulshan-i-Ibrahami** in which he has discussed Bahmani rule.
- **Tazkirat – ul – muluk** is another work of the period written by a merchant from Shiraz and therefore he is better known **as Shirazi**.
- **Burhan – I – Maasir of Sayed Ali Tabataba** written after the decline of the dynasty. He was a member of the court of Nizam Shahis of Ahmadnagar.
- Among the travellers, the most notable person is **Athanasius Nikitin** who visited the capital Bidar in the days of **Mahmud Gawan**, the famous Prime minister of the Sultan Muhammad Shah.
- Nikitin was in Bidar for **four years from 1470-74**. He has emphasised the great contrast between the huge wealth and luxury of the nobility and the miserable poverty of the common people in the countryside.

Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (c. 1347 – 1358 CE)

- The founder of the Bahmani kingdom. His original name was **Hasan Gangu** and he was an Afghan adventurer.

- The military conflicts between the Vijayanagara and the Bahmani kingdom were almost a regular feature and lasted as long as these kingdoms continued.
- The Bahmani kingdom also had conflicts with the **Warangal state**. Hasan Gangu led his first campaign against Warangal in c. 1350 CE and forced its ruler **Kapaya Nayaka** to cede to him the fortress of Kaulas.
- Towards the end of his reign, the **kingdom stretched from the Wenganga river (tributary of Godavari) to Krishna** and east to west from **Bhongir (Bhuvanagiri in Odisha)** to **Daulatabad**.
- He was an excellent administrator, dividing his realm into **four provinces**: Gulbarg, Daulatabad, Berar, and Bidar.

Muhammad Shah I (1358 – 1377 CE)

- When he inherited the newly formed sultanate from his father Alauddin Bahman Shah, the region was still overrun with thieves and robbers.
- As a result, he spent the **majority of his reign building law in his kingdom**.
- He also sat on the **takht—firoza, or Turquoise throne**, which **Kapaya Nayaka** had given him.
- In 1367, he collaborated with a **Persian architect named Rafi of Qazvin** to construct the **Grand Mosque of Gulbarga**.

Taj-ud-din Firoz Shah (c. 1397 – 1422 CE)

- He was the most remarkable figure in the Bahmani kingdom. He was well acquainted with the **religious sciences** (commentaries on the Quran, jurisprudence, etc) and was fond of **natural sciences** like botany, geometry, logic, etc.
- He was a **good calligraphist, poet and also composed extempore verses**.
- According to **Ferishta**, he was well versed in many languages, Persian, Arabic, Turkish and also Telugu, Marathi and Kannada.
- He started the Bahmani expansion towards **Berar** by defeating the Gond Raja, Narsing Rai of Kherla. Rai had to pay a huge amount of gold, silver and other valuables, also a daughter of Rai was married to him.
- The **most remarkable step** taken by Firoz Shah Bahmani was the **induction of Hindus in his administration, particularly revenue administration**.
- He encouraged the **study of astronomy** and also **built an observatory near Daulatabad**.
- He gave much importance to the **principal ports** of his kingdom, **Chaul and Dabhol** which brought in luxury items from all parts of the world.
- He emerged victorious against Vijayanagara in c. 1398 CE and c. 1408 CE but later, received a setback in c. 1420 CE when he was defeated by Deva Raya I.

Ahmad Shah Wali (c. 1422 – 1435 CE)

- The defeat of Firoz Shah Bahmani in c. 1420 CE weakened his position and he was compelled to abdicate in favour of his brother, Ahmad Shah, who is **called a saint (wali)** on account of his association with the **famous Sufi saint Gesu Daraz**.
- He built a tomb for **Gesu Daraz**.
- He continued the struggle for domination of the eastern seaboard in south India. In the previous battle, the ruler of Warangal had sided with Vijayanagara and in order to avenge the

defeat, Ahmad Shah **invaded Warangal, defeated and killed** its ruler and annexed most of its territories.

- In order to consolidate over the newly acquired territory, he **shifted his capital from Gulbarga to Bidar**. After this, he was interested in Malwa, Gondwana and the Konkan.

Humayun Shah (c. 1458 – 1461 CE)

- Humayun Shah **appointed Mahmud Gawan as a minister** who introduced many reforms. After Humayun's death, Gawan became the **regent to his minor son prince Nizam Shah** (c. 1461 – 1463 CE) and governed the kingdom.
- However, the young sultan died in c. 1463 CE and his brother **Muhammad Shah III** who was only nine years old, succeeded him (c. 1463 – 1482 CE) and Mahmud Gawan served as his prime minister.
- The **Bahmani kingdom reached its peak during the reign of Muhammad Shah III** due to the efficient governance by Mahmud Gawan.

Mahmud Gawan (c. 1461 – 1481 CE)

- The Bahmani kingdom reached its height of power and territorial limits during the prime ministership of Mahmud Gawan. He was a **Persian trader**.
- He was granted the title of “**Malik-ut-Tujjar**” (**chief of merchants**) by the ruler Humayun Shah.
- Later, he was made wazir (prime minister) due to his capabilities and was given the title of “**Khwaju-i-Jahan**”.
- He extended the Bahmani kingdom by making further annexations. He conquered **Vijayanagara territories up to Kanchi**.
- Mahmud Gawan's major **military contribution was the over-running of the western coastal areas**, including Dabhol and Goa. The control over **Dabhol and Goa** led to further expansion of the Bahmani overseas trade with Iran, Iraq, etc.
- Mahmud Gawan also tried to settle the northern frontiers of the kingdom. With the **help of the ruler of Gujarat**, he defeated **Mahmud Khalji of Malwa over the control of Berar**.
- He carried out many internal administrative reforms. He divided the kingdom into **eight provinces or tarafs and each taraf was governed by a tarafdar**.
- Only **one fort of each province was under the direct control of the provincial tarafdar** and the remaining forts of the province were under the control of a **Qiladar or commander of the forts** who was appointed by the central government.
- He patronised art and built a magnificent **madrasa or college in the capital Bidar**. Some of the famous scholars of the time belonging to Iran and Iraq came to this madrasa.

Internal Power Struggle

- Their problem was the **internal fissiparous trend** between **two groups of Muslim nobility**. The nobles were divided into two groups – **long-established Deccanis** and the **newcomers who were foreigners (Afaqis)**.
- The **Deccanis were mainly the Sunnis** whereas the **Paradesis belonged to the Shiah sect** and this aggravated their rivalry.
- Being an Afaqi, it was difficult for Mahmud Gawan to win the confidence of the Deccanis. Though he adopted a **broad policy of conciliation**, the party strife could not be stopped. Deccanis plotted against him and induced the young sultan to punish him with a death sentence and had him executed in c. 1482 CE. Mahmud Gawan was over 70 years old at that time. Later the Sultan regretted and buried him with full honour.

- It was during the lifetime of Mahmud Gawan that the **Russian merchant Athanasius Nikitin visited Bidar**. Nikitin records that the nobility in the kingdom enjoyed all sorts of luxury and led an extravagant life while the common people including cultivators, artisans and service groups lived in utter poverty.
- After the execution of Mahmud Gawan, the party strife became more intense. The various governors became independent.
- Soon the Bahmani kingdom broke into five principalities –
 - the **Nizam Shahis** of Ahmadnagar,
 - the **Adil Shahis** of Bijapur,
 - the **Qutub Shahis** of Golconda,
 - the **Imad Shahis** of Berar and
 - the **Barid Shahis** of Bidar
- They were collectively called “the Deccan Sultanates”. Of these, the kingdoms of Ahmadnagar, Bijapur and Golconda played a leading role in Deccan politics till their absorption into the Mughal empire during the 17th century.

ADMINISTRATION

- The kingdom was divided into **four administrative units** called ‘taraf’ or provinces. These provinces were Daultabad, Bidar, Berar and Gulbarga.
- Every province was under a **tarafdar** who was also called a **subedar**.
- Some land was converted into **Khalisa land from the jurisdiction of the tarafdar**.
- Khalisa land was that piece of land which was used to run expenses of the king and the royal household.
- Nobles used to get their salary either in cash or in form of grant of land or ‘jagir’.

MILITARY

- After the Sultan, the army's commander was known as the Amir-ul-umra.
- The Sultan had his own bodyguards, known as the Khas-i-Khel.
- Bahamani ruler depended for military support on his amirs.
- There were two groups in the ranks of amirs: One was the **Deccanis** who were immigrant Muslims and had been staying for a long time in the Deccan region. The other group was **Afaquis or Pardesis** who had recently come from Central Asia, Iran and Iraq.
- In addition to cavalry, infantry, and war-elephants, the Bahmani kingdom had artillery. Bahamanis were familiar with the use of gunpowder in warfare.
- In the army, instituted the **Mansabdari system**, in which military leaders were assigned jagirs based **on their mansabs or ranks** in order to pay for the armies they raised.
- Jagirdars were compelled to present a revenue and expenditure statement to the central government.
- **Kiledars**, the commanders in control of forts, were directly accountable to the central authority.

LITERATURE

- **Persian ,Arabic and Urdu** literature flourished in this period.
- **Mohammad Gawan** wrote poems in Persian language. **Riyaz-ul-Insha, Manazir-ul-insha** are his works.

- A new dialect called “**Dakhini urdu**” became popular during this time.
- The famous sufi saint of Gulbarga, **Khwaja Bande Nawaz Gesu Daraj** wrote in this language.

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

- They followed **Indo-Islamic style** of architecture with some improvisation. Local materials were used to construct the buildings.
- The architecture was highly influenced by **Persian architecture**.
- Some **features** of this style are: Tall minarets, Strong arches, Huge domes, Spacious Hazaras, Crescent moon at the top of the building.

Examples

- **Monuments at Gulbarga:** Shah bazaar mosque, Hafta Gumbaz, Jama masjid etc
- **At Bidar :** Mohammad Gawan's madarasa, Solah khamba mosque, Rangeen mahal, Janata mahal etc
- **At Bijapur :** Gol gumbaz(built by Mohammad Adil shah in 1656AD), Ibrahim roza, Bara Kaman, Anand mahal, Chand Bawdi etc.

→ DECCAN SULTANATES

- The Deccan sultanates refer to five Muslim-ruled late medieval kingdoms—**Bijapur, Golkonda, Ahmadnagar, Bidar, and Berar** of south-central India.
- The Deccan sultanates located on the Deccan Plateau, between the **Krishna River and the Vindhya Range**.
- They had become independent states during the breakup of the Bahmani Sultanate: Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, and Berar in 1490, Bidar in 1492, and Golkonda in 1512. In 1510, Bijapur repulsed an invasion by the Portuguese against the city of Goa, but lost it later that year.
- Although generally rivals, they allied against the Vijayanagara empire in 1565, permanently weakening Vijayanagar in the Battle of Talikota.

- In 1574, after a coup in Berar, **Ahmadnagar invaded and conquered Berar**.
- In 1619, **Bijapur annexed Bidar**.
- The Mughal Empire later conquered the sultanates, stripping Berar from Ahmadnagar in 1596, taking **Ahmadnagar completely between 1616 and 1636**, and **Aurangzeb's 1686-1687 campaign conquered Golkonda and Bijapur**.
- As in the north, they left a rich legacy of architecture, literature, and art in the southern region of India. As with the Muslims in the north, the Deccan sultanates' rich legacy of culture helped shape India today.



→ AHMADNAGAR SULTANATE

- **Malik Ahmed Shah Bahri**, after defeating the Bahmani army in 1490, declared independence and established the **Nizam Shahi dynasty of Ahmadnagar or Ahmadnagar sultanate**.
- The territory of the sultanate situated in the northwestern Deccan, between the sultanates of **Gujarat and Bijapur**.
- Initially **Junnar** served as his capital. In **1494**, Bahri laid the foundation for the new capital **Ahmadnagar**.
- Malik Ahmed Shah, after several attempts, secured the great fortress of Daulatabad in 1499.
- **Murtaza Shah annexed Berar in 1574**.
- **Chand Bibi**, as a regent of **Bahadur Shah** bravely repulsed an attack led by **Murad, the Mughal Prince in 1596**.

She acted as the Regent of Bijapur Sultanate during the minority of Ibrahim Adil Shah II in 1580-1590, and regent of Ahmednagar Sultanate during the minority of her great nephew Bahadur Shah in 1595-1600. Chand Bibi is best known for defending Ahmednagar against the Mughal forces of Emperor Akbar in 1596.

- After the death of Chand Bibi in **1599**, **Ahmadnagar was conquered** and Bahadur Shah imprisoned.
- But **Malik Ambar** and other Ahmadnagar officials defied the Mughals and declared Murtaza Shah II as sultan in 1600, at a new capital **Paranda**.
- He himself became **Peshwa**—a title that had been common in Ahmednagar for a long time.
- Later, the capital shifted first to Junnar and then to a new city Khadki (later Aurangabad).
- In **1636** Aurangzeb, then **Mughal viceroy of Deccan finally annexed the sultanate to the Mughal empire**.

Malik Ambar

- Malik Ambar was a prime minister and general of African descent who served the Ahmadnagar Sultanate.
- Malik Ambar rose through the ranks of Changez Khan, a well-known and powerful Habshi noble of Murtaza Nizam Shah.
- He is regarded as **a pioneer in guerilla warfare** in the region.
- He is credited with **completing a revenue settlement** for much of the Deccan, which served as the foundation for subsequent settlements. He is a **revered figure among Gujarat's Siddis**.
- Malik Ambar gathered a **large band of Maratha troopers, or bargis**, around him. The Marathas were skilled at quick movements, as well as plundering and cutting off enemy troops' supplies.
- Although guerilla warfare was common among the Marathas in the Deccan, the Mughals were not used to it.
- Ambar made it difficult for the Mughals to consolidate their position in Berar, Ahmednagar, and Balaghat with the help of the Marathas.

Paintings

- The Nizam Shahi rulers of Ahmadnagar enthusiastically **patronized miniature painting**. The earliest surviving paintings took the form of illustrations of a **manuscript Tarif-i-Hussain Shahi (c. 1565)**.
- A **miniature painting of Murtaza Nizam Shah (c. 1575)**.
- Three other paintings, the **Running Elephant**, the **Royal Picnic**, and the **Young Prince Embraced by a Small Girl** belong to the period of Burhan Nizam Shah II.

Monuments

- The **tomb of Ahmad Shah I Bahri** (1509) at the center of **Bagh Rouza**, a garden complex had been the earliest one.
- The **Jami Masjid** also belong to the same period. **Mecca Masjid**, built in 1525, by Rumi Khan, a Turkish artillery officer of Burhan Nizam Shah I has originality in its design.
- The **Kotla complex** constructed in 1537 as a religious educational institution.
- The impressive **Farah Bagh** stood the centerpiece of a huge palatial complex completed in 1583.
- The tomb of **Malik Ambar in Khuldabad (1626)** represents another impressive monument of that period.

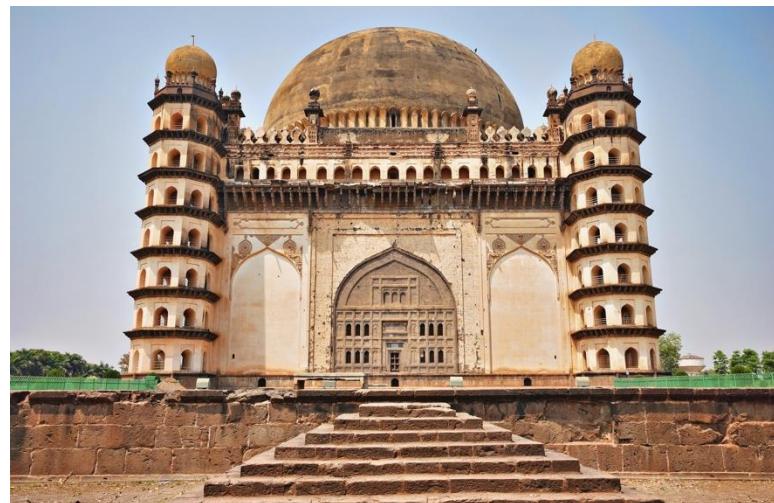
→ BIJAPUR SULTANATE

- The **Adil Shahi dynasty ruled the Bijapur sultanate from 1490 to 1686**.
- The Adil Shahis originally reined as provincial rulers of the Bahmani Sultanate. But with the breakup of the Bahmani state after 1518, **Ismail Adil Shah** established an independent sultanate, one of the five Deccan sultanates.
- The Bijapur sultanate, located in southwestern India, straddling the **Western Ghats range of southern Maharashtra and northern Karnataka**. Ismail Adil Shah and his successors embellished the capital at Bijapur with numerous monuments.
- The Adil Shahis fought the empire of Vijayanagar, which lay to the south across the Tungabhadra River, and fought the other sultanates as well.
- The sultanates combined forces to deliver a decisive defeat to Vijayanagar in 1565, after which the empire broke up. **Bijapur seized control of the Raichur Doab from Vijayanagar**.
- In **1619, the Adil Shahis conquered the neighboring sultanate of Bidar, incorporating it into their realm**. In the seventeenth century, the Marathas revolted successfully under Shivaji's leadership and captured major parts of the Sultanate except Bijapur.
- Aurangzeb conquered the weakened Sultanate in 1686 with the fall of Bijapur, bringing the dynasty to an end.

CULTURAL CONTRIBUTIONS

- The Adil Shahi rulers contributed greatly in the fields of art, architecture, literature and music. Bijapur developed into a cosmopolitan city, attracting many scholars, artists, musicians, and Sufi saints from Rome, Iran, Iraq, Turkey, and Turkestan.
- Among the major architectural works in Bijapur sultanate, the unfinished **Jami Masjid (started by Ali Adil Shah I in 1576)** represents one of the earliest.

- The **Ibrahim Rouza**, originally planned as a tomb for queen **Taj Sultana**, but later converted into the **tomb for Ibrahim Adil Shah II and his family**, stands out as the most splendid monument built during the reign of Ibrahim II. That complex, completed in 1626, consists of a **paired tomb and a mosque**. Ibrahim II also planned to construct a new twin city to Bijapur, **Nauraspur**. The construction began in 1599 but never completed.
- Gol Gumbaz**, the mausoleum of **Muhammad Adil Shah**, stands as the greatest monument in Bijapur, completed in 1656. The other important architectural works of the period include the **Chini Mahal**, the **Jal Mandir**, the **Sat Manzil**, the **Gagan Mahal**, the **Anand Mahal**, and the **Asar Mahal**



- The **maximum number of miniature paintings came down to us belong to the period of reign of Sultan Ibrahim Adil Shah II**.
- Maulana Farrukh Hussain** was renowned as the most celebrated painter of his court.
- The Adil Shahi rulers published many literary works in **Dakhani**.
- Ibrahim Adil Shah II** himself wrote a book of songs, **Kitab-i-Nauras in Dakhani**. That book contains a number of songs whose tunes set to different ragas and raginis.
- In his songs, he **praised Hindu goddess Sarasvati** along with the Prophet and Sufi saint **Hazrat Khwaja Banda Nawaz Gesudaraz**.
- He had a unique **tambur (lute)** known as **Moti Khan** in his possession.
- The famous Persian poet laureate **Zuhuri** served as his court poet.
- The **Mushaira (poetic symposium)**, born in the Bijapur court, later traveled north.

- The **Adil Shahi kings had been known for tolerance towards Hindus and non-interference in their religious matters**. They employed Hindus to high posts, especially as the officers who deal with the accounts and the administration, since the documents pertaining to the both remained in Marathi.

► GOLKONDA SULTANATE

- The **Qutb Shahi dynasty** stood as the ruling family of the sultanate of Golkonda in southern India. Shia Muslims, they belonged to a Turkmen tribe from the **Turkmenistan-Armenia region**.
- The dynasty's founder, **Sultan Quli Qutub-ul-Mulk**, migrated to Delhi with some of his relatives and friends in the beginning of the sixteenth century.
- Later, he migrated south to Deccan and served Bahmani sultan Mohammad Shah.

- He **conquered Golkonda and became the Governor of Telangana region in 1518**, after the disintegration of the Bahmani sultanate into the five Deccan sultanates.
- Soon after, he declared independence from the Bahmani sultanate, took title **Qutb Shah, and established Qutb Shahi dynasty of Golconda**. The dynasty ruled for 171 years, until the Mughal emperor Aurangzeb's army conquered Golkonda in 1687.
- Qutb Shahi rulers appointed Hindus in important administrative posts. Ibrahim Quli Qutb Shah appointed **Murari Rao as Peshwa**, second to only Mir Jumla (prime minister).

Monuments

- The **fortified city of Golkonda** stands out as one of the earliest architectural achievements of the Qutb Shahi dynasty.
- The **Jami Masjid (1518) erected by Quli-Qutb-ul-Mulk**, the tomb of Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah (1611), the tomb of **Muhammad Qutb Shah (1626)**, and the mosque of **Hayat Bakshi Begam (1666)** represent the notable monuments in Golkonda.
- **Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah** decided to shift the capital to **Hyderabad**, 8 km east of Golkonda. Here, he constructed the most original monument in the Deccan, the **Char Minar in the heart of the new city**. That monument (completed in 1591) has four minarets of 56 meters height.



Literature

- The Qutb Shahi rulers had been great patrons of literature and invited many scholars, poets, historians and Sufi saints from Iran to settle in their sultanate. The development of **Dakhani language** embodies the most important contribution of the Golkonda sultanate in the field of literature.
- **Ibrahim Quli Qutb Shah patronized Telugu literature** also.
- Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah had been not only a great patron of art and literature but also a poet of high order. He wrote in **Dakhani, Persian and Telugu** and left an extensive Diwan (volume) in Dakhani, known as **Kulliyat-i-Mohammad Quli Qutb Shah**. Apart from the praise of God and the Prophet, he also wrote on nature, love, and contemporary social life.

Paintings

- The Qutb Shahi rulers invited many **Persian artists like Shaykh Abbasi and Muhammad Zaman** into their court, which left a profound impact of different phases of Iranian art on the miniature paintings of the period.
- The earliest miniature paintings, manuscript of **Anwar-i-Suhayli** (c. 1550–1560).
- The manuscript of **Kulliyat-i-Mohammad Quli Qutb Shah** (c. 1590–1600).
- A manuscript of the **Diwan-i-Hafiz** (c. 1630).
- The **Procession of Sultan Abdulla Qutb Shah riding an elephant** (c. 1650).

→ BERAR SULTANATE

- During the disintegration of Bahmani sultanate, **Fath-ullah Imad-ul-Mulk, governor of Berar declared independence in 1490, and founded the Imad Shahi dynasty** of Berar sultanate.
- He established the capital at **Achalpur (Ellichpur)**. He also fortified Gavilgad and Narnala.
- His successor, **Ala-ud-din**, resisted the aggression of Ahmadnagar with the help from **Bahadur Shah, sultan of Gujarat**.
- In 1574, Mutaza I , sultan of Ahmadnagar annexed it to his sultanate.
- The **ruined palace of Hauz Katora**, 3 km. west of Achalpur constitutes the only notable surviving Imad Shahi monument.

→ BIDAR SULTANATE

- **Qasim Barid, founder of Barid Shahi dynasty** joined the service of Bahmani ruler Mahmud Shah as a sar-naubat but later became mir-jumla of the Bahmani sultanate.
- In 1492, he declared independence and carved out Bidar sultanate. **Bidar stood as the smallest of the five Deccan sultanates.**
- The last ruler of the Bidar, sultante Amir Barid Shah III, fell in 1619, and Bijapur Sultanate annexed the sultanate.
- The Barid Shahi rulers focused their **architectural activities on garden tombs**. The tomb of **Ali Barid Shah (1577) represents the most notable monument** in Bidar.
- The **Rangin Mahal in Bidar**, built during the reign of Ali Barid Shah constitutes a complete and exquisitely decorated courtly structure.
- Other important monuments in Bidar during that period include the **tomb of Qasim II and Kali Masjid**.
- An **important class of metalwork known as Bidri originated from Bidar**. Those metalworks used mainly **black zinc, inlaid with designs of silver and brass and sometimes copper**.


© Rakmoddin Photography

→ KASHMIR

- Kalhana was a **12th-century poet and historian who wrote the Rajatarangini** during c.1148 – 1150 CE. It provides the earliest source on Kashmir that can be labelled as a reliable historical text on this region.
- According to **Hindu mythology**, Kashmir was once a lake that was drained out by a rishi named **Kashyapa**, who then asked people to settle in the valley.
- According to **Al-Beruni**, entry into the beautiful kingdom of Kashmir **was not allowed even to the Hindus**, who were not known personally to the local nobles.
- In the 11th century, **Shaivism was the central religion in Kashmir**. However, the situation changed with the ending of Hindu rule around the middle of the 14th century.
- During the **reign of Sahdev** (c. 1301 – 1320 CE) of the **Deva Dynasty**, Kashmir was invaded by a **Turkic-Mongol chief, Dalucha (Zulju)** and Sahdev fled from Kashmir.
- Dalucha ordered the widespread massacre of men while women and children were enslaved and sold to the merchants of Central Asia. The hapless Kashmir government could not resist, thereby losing all credibility and public support.
- In c. **1339 CE, Shamsuddin Shah became the ruler of Kashmir** and from this period, the religion Islam was being established in Kashmir.
- **Shah Mir** arrived in Kashmir in 1313 along with his family, during the reign of Suhadeva (1301–1320), whose service he entered. In subsequent years, through his tact and ability Shah Mir rose to prominence and became one of the most important personalities of his time.

Shah Mir Dynasty (c. 1339 – 1555 CE)

- Shamsuddin Shah Mir (c. 1339 – 1342 CE): He was the founder of the Shah Mir dynasty and was titled Sultan Shamsuddin.

Sultan Shihab-ud-din (c. 1354 – 1373 CE)

- He was a great ruler who led many campaigns and conquered many regions like **Sindh, Kabul, Ghazni, Dardistan, Gilgit, Balochistan and Ladakh**.
- He faced an invasion by the **ruler of Kashgar (Central Asia)** who later claimed Ladakh and Baltistan.
- He founded a new town **Shihab-ud-din Pora** (now Shadipora).
- Due to his good administration, he is known as '**Lalitaditya of Medieval Kashmir**'.
- **Lalitaditya alias Muktapida was a monarch belonging to the Karkota dynasty of Kashmir region**

Sikander Shah (c. 1389 – 1413 CE)

- He was **intolerant** towards other religions. He levied taxes on **non-Muslims**, forced people to convert to Islam and earned the title of "**But-Shikan**" for **destroying idols**.
- It is said that these orders were issued at the behest of the **king's minister, Suha Bhat** who had converted to Islam and was bent on harassing his former co-religionists.
- After his death, his son Ali Shah (c. 1413- 1419 CE) ascended the throne. After a few years, his brother Shah Khan ascended the throne under the title of "**Zainul Abidin**".

Zain-ul-Abideen (c. 1420 – 1470 CE)

- He is called **Bud Shah (The Great Sultan)** by Kashmiris.
- He was a **benevolent, liberal and enlightened** ruler.
- He brought back all the non-Muslims who had fled and gave freedom to revert to Hinduism to all those who were forcibly converted.
- He even **restored the libraries and the land grants which the Hindus** had enjoyed. He **abolished jizya, cow slaughter** and also **withdrew the ban on sati**, to respect the wishes of the Hindus.
- The Hindus **occupied high offices in his government**, for instance, **Sriya Bhatt was minister of justice and court physician**.
- As noted by Abul Fazl, Kashmir had 150 majestic temples and it is most likely that they must have been restored under Zain-ul-Abideen.
- The sultan was a learned man and composed poetry. He was well **versed in Persian, Kashmiri, Sanskrit and Tibetan languages**.
- He also **patronised Sanskrit** and Persian scholars and **under his patronage, the Mahabharata and Kalhana's Rajatarangini were translated into Persian**.
- Though he was not a great warrior, he **defeated the Mongol invasion of Ladakh**, conquered the **Baltistan region (called Tibbat-i-Buzarg)** and kept control over Jammu, Rajouri, etc. He thus unified the Kashmir kingdom.
- The fame of Zain-ul-Abideen had spread far and wide. He was in touch with the leading rulers in other parts of India and also with the leaders of Asia.
- He paid great attention towards the **economic development** of Kashmir. He sent two persons to Samarqand to learn the art of **paper-mache and bookbinding**. He encouraged the **art of shawl making** for which Kashmir is world-famous.
- Under his rule, **the art of wood carving, stone cutting and polishing, gold beating, bottle making, musket making and carpet weaving** prospered.
- The sultan developed agriculture by making large numbers of dams, canals and bridges. He also introduced reforms in the currency, market control and fixed prices of commodities.
- He built an **artificial island, Zaina Lank, in the Wular lake** on which he built his palace and a mosque. He also founded the towns of **Zainapur, Zainakut and Zainagir**. He also built the first wooden bridge at **Srinagar, Zaina Kadal**.
- With the death of the Sultan in c. 1470 CE, the Shah Mir dynasty also started to decline due to its weak rulers. The last ruler of this dynasty was **Habib Shah** (c. 1555 CE). He was dethroned by his commander **Ghazi Chak who was a Military General**.

Chak Dynasty (c. 1555 – 1586 CE)

- The dynasty was founded by **Muhammad Ghazi Shah Chak** in c. 1555 CE. The Chaks originally belonged to the **Dard territory of the Gilgit Hunza area**. Chak rulers prevented the attempts of Mughal rulers like Babur and Humayun to annex Kashmir.
- **Yusuf Shah Chak** (c. 1579 – 1586 CE) became the ruler of Kashmir after his father, Ali Shah Chak. He was brought for talks with Akbar but was imprisoned by him in Bihar, where he died. After his death, his son Yaqub Shah Chak became the ruler of Kashmir. He tried to resist the Mughal Army but was defeated by Qasim Khan who led the army.

- Thus, the kingdom of Kashmir was conquered by Akbar (in c. 1586 CE) and became a part of the Mughal Empire.

→ SHARQI DYNASTY, JAUNPUR (1394 AD – 1479 AD)

- With the growing weakness of the Delhi Sultanate and the **invasion of Timur in Delhi (c. 1398 CE)**, **Malik Sarwar (Sultanu Sharq)** – governor of Jaunpur took advantage of the situation and declared independence.
- He extended his **authority over Awadh** and a large part of the **Ganga Yamuna doab** such as Kannauj, Dalmau, Kara, Sandeela, Bihar and Tirhut. He laid the foundation of the Sharqi dynasty.
- A distinctive architecture evolved during this period known as the **Sharqi style of architecture**. Jaunpur was called the **Sheraz of India**.
- The **Atala Masjid, Jama Masjid and the Lal Darwaja Masjid** are some of the examples of the Sharqi style of architecture.

Malik Sarwar (c.1394 – 1399 CE)

- He founded the Sharqi dynasty.
- The **Rai of Jajnagar and the ruler of Lakhnauti** recognised his suzerainty.
- After his death, his adopted son Malik Qaranfal ascended the throne and took the title of Mubarak Shah.

Ibrahim Shah (c. 1402 – 1440 CE)

- Ibrahim was the younger brother of Mubarak Shah. During his reign, **Jaunpur became an excellent centre of learning**.
- His kingdom extended to **Bihar in the east and to Kannauj in the west**. He led an expedition to Delhi but failed.
- He patronised **Islamic learning and established a number of colleges** for this purpose.
- The **Hashiah-i-Hind, the Bahar-ul-Mawwaj and the Fatwa-i-Ibrahim Shahi** are some of the scholarly works on Islamic theology and law that were produced during his reign.
- The famous **Atala Masjid**, the foundation of which was laid by Firoz Shah Tughlaq (in c.1376 CE) was completed during the reign of Ibrahim Shah.
- The **Jhanjhiri Masjid** was also constructed by Ibrahim Shah in c.1430 CE.

Mahmud Shah (c.1440 – 1457 CE)

- He **invaded Delhi in c.1452 CE but was defeated by Bahlol Lodhi**. Later, he made another attempt to conquer Delhi and marched into Etawah.
- Finally, he agreed to a treaty that accepted the right of Bahlol Lodhi over Shamsabad. But when Bahlol Lodhi tried to take possession of Shamsabad, he was opposed by the forces of Jaunpur.
- Around this time, Mahmud Shah died and was succeeded by his son Bhikhan who took the title of Muhammad Shah.

- During his reign, the **Lal Darwaja Masjid** was constructed in c.1450 CE.

Hussain Shah Sharqi (c. 1458 – 1505 CE)

- He assumed the **title of Gandharva** and contributed significantly to the development of **Khyal – a genre of Hindustani classical music**.
- He also composed several **ragas (melodies)** like **Malhar-syama, Bhopal syama, Gaur-syama, Hussaini or Jaunpuri-asavari (presently known as Jaunpuri)** and Jaunpuri basant.
- During his rule, **Jama Masjid was built in c.1470 CE**.
- Finally, **Sikander Lodhi who succeeded Bahlol Lodhi annexed Jaunpur**, Hussain Shah died and the Sharqi dynasty came to an end.



- Sharqi architecture carries a **distinct impact of the Tughlaq style**- Battering effect; use of arch-and-beam combination in the openings.
- Lofty Propylons** with slopy sides raised in the centre of the sanctuary screen.
- Propylons consist of a huge recessed arch framed by tapering square minars.

→ THE KINGDOM OF BENGAL

- Bengal was ruled by the **Palas in the 8th century** and by the **Senas in the 12th century**. It was the **easternmost province of the Delhi Sultanate**.
- Bengal had frequently become independent of the control of Delhi owing to its distance.
- Due to the preoccupation of Muhammad bin Tughlaq with rebellions in other parts of the Sultanate, Bengal again broke away from Delhi in c.1338 CE. Thus, Bengal emerged as an independent regional state in the 14th century.
- In c. 1342 CE, **Haji Ilyas Khan (one of the nobles) became the ruler of Bengal** and laid the foundation of the **Ilyas Shah dynasty**.
- The Bengal Sultanate, which ruled for around 125 years though in phases, established by Ilyas Shah emerged as one of the leading diplomatic, economic and military powers in the subcontinent.
- The capitals of Bengal – **Pandua and Gaur** were adorned with huge buildings.
- Bengali developed as a regional language while Persian remained the language of administration.**

- The sultans patronised the poet **Maladhar Basu**, compiler of **Sri Krishna Vijaya** and awarded him with the **title of Gunaraja Khan** and his son was granted the title of **Satyaraja Khan**.
- Later, the kingdom was taken over by the Hussain Shahi dynasty that ruled for a period of 44 years.
- Thereafter, one of the most capable Suri rulers, **Sher Shah Suri** ruled Bengal who even ousted the Mughal ruler Humayun from Delhi.

ILYAS SHAH DYNASTY

Haji Shamsuddin Ilyas Khan (c.1342 – 1357 CE)

- He laid the foundation of the Ilyas Shah dynasty. He extended his dominions in the west from **Tirhut to Champaran and Gorakhpur and finally, up to Banaras**. This forced Firoz Shah Tughlaq to undertake a campaign against him.
- Firoz Shah Tughlaq occupied the **capital of Bengal, Pandua** and forced Ilyas to take shelter in the strong fort of Ekdala.
- Ilyas Shah had to sign a treaty of **friendship with Firoz Shah Tughlaq, according to which the River Kosi in Bihar was fixed as the boundary between the two kingdoms**.
- Friendly relations with Delhi enabled Ilyas Shah to extend his control over the **kingdom of Kamrup (modern Assam)**.
- Ilyas Shah was a popular ruler and had many achievements to his credit. Ilyas Shah is considered the **Bengali equivalent of Alexander or Napoleon**.

Ghiyasuddin Azam (c. 1390 – 1411 CE)

- The famous sultan in the dynasty of Ilyas Shah was **Ghiyasuddin Azam Shah**. He was famous for delivering justice.
- Azam Shah had close relations with the **learned men of his times**, including the famous **Persian poet, Hafiz of Shiraz**.
- He also had **cordial ties with China** which helped in the overseas trade of Bengal. The **Chittagong port** was an important port for trade with China.
- There was a brief spell of **Hindu rule under Raja Ganesh (c. 1414 – 1435 CE)**, but later the rule of the Ilyas Shahi dynasty was restored by **Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah** and his successors (c. 1435 – 1487 CE). Thereafter, Habshis came to rule over Bengal for a brief period of seven years (c. 1487 – 1494 CE) and were overthrown by Alauddin Hussain Shah.

HUSSAIN SHAHI DYNASTY

Alauddin Hussain Shah (c. 1494 – 1519 CE)

- He was the founder of the Hussain Shahi dynasty. A brilliant period began under the enlightened rule of Alauddin Hussain.
- He not only expanded the frontiers of Bengal but also brought about a **cultural renaissance in Bengal**.
- During his reign, the **Bengali language flourished**.
- The sultan restored law and order and adopted a liberal policy by offering **high offices to the Hindus – his wazir, chief bodyguard, chief physician, master of mint** were all Hindus. He also had great respect for the **famous Vaishnavite saint, Chaitanya**.

- He conquered **Jajnagar, Orissa and Kamarupa**. He also extended his empire to Chittagong port, which witnessed the arrival of the first Portuguese merchants.
- After his death in c. 1518 CE, his son Nasib Khan ascended the throne under the title of Nasir-ud-din Nasrat Shah.

Nasiruddin Nasrat Shah (c. 1518 – 1533 CE)

- He married **Ibrahim Lodhi's daughter and gave refuge to the Afghan lords**. He saved Bengal from the Mughal invasion by signing a treaty with Babur.
- He followed his father's policy of expanding his kingdom. However, after c. 1526 CE, he had to contend with the Mughal supremacy and also suffered a reversal at the hands of the Ahom kingdom.
- After his death, his son **Alauddin Firuz Shah** ascended the throne. During his reign, Bengal forces entered **Assam and reached Kaliabor** but he was murdered by his uncle Ghiyassuddin Mahmud Shah.

Ghiyasuddin Mahmud Shah (c. 1533 – 1538 CE)

- He was the **last sultan of the Hussain Shahi dynasty** who ruled from **Sonargaon**. He is described as a pleasure-seeking and easy-going ruler who could not deal with the political problems which beset Bengal during his reign.

- In c. **1534 CE**, the **Portuguese** who had arrived in Chittagong were sent to Gaur as prisoners on charges of misbehaviour. Later, they were freed and allowed to **set up factories at Chittagong and Hughli**.

- **Ghiyasuddin and his Portuguese allies** were defeated by **Sher Shah Suri** and his Afghans in c. 1538 CE.
- Sher Shah conquered **Bengal and established the Sur Empire**.
- Later, in c. **1586 CE**, **Bengal was conquered by Akbar** and made it a **province (Suba)**. The Mughals established their **financial capital** in the heart of the eastern delta at Dhaka, where officials were granted land and settled there.

► ASSAM

- The history of Assam is the history of the confluence of the **Tibeto-Burman (Sino Tibetan), Indo Aryan and Austroasiatic cultures**.
- Although invaded over the centuries, it was never a vassal or a colony to an external power until the **Burmese in c. 1821 CE** and subsequently, the **British in c. 1826 CE after the famous treaty of Yandaboo**.

- The history of Assam has been derived from varied sources, proto-history has been derived from folklore epics like **Mahabharata** and two medieval texts compiled in the Assam region – the **Kalika Purana and the Yagini Tantra**.
- The establishment of **Pushyavarman's Varman dynasty (4th century)** begins the ancient history of the **Kamarupa kingdom**.
- The Varman dynasty left behind a corpus of Kamarupa inscriptions on rocks, clay, copper, etc. **Samudragupta's Allahabad pillar** also mentions the Kamarupa kingdom.
- The **Buranji chronicles written in the Ahom and the Assamese languages** by the Ahom kings give a detailed account of Assam in the medieval period.

- According to the **Kanai Boroxiboa rock inscription**, the Bengal Muslim rulers had tried to gain control over the Brahmaputra region since the time of Muhammad bin Bakhtiyar Khalji (c. 1207 CE). They, however, suffered a series of disastrous defeats as the region was little known to them.

Kanai Barasi' Rock Inscription site is located on the northern bank of the river Brahmaputra

- There were **two warring kingdoms in north Bengal and Assam at that time – Kamata, also known as Kamrupa in the west and the Ahom kingdom in the east.**

Ahom dynasty (1228–1826)

- The Ahoms, a mongoloid tribe from north Burma, had been successful in building a strong kingdom in the 13th century and had been Hinduised in course of time. The **name Assam is derived from them.**
- Ilyas Shah raided Kamata and reached up to Gauhati, however, he could not hold the area and the **River Karatoya** (*also spelt Korotoa River is a small stream in Rajshahi Division of Bangladesh*) was fixed as the north-east boundary of Bengal.
- Later, **Kamata rulers** recovered many regions on the eastern bank of the river Karatoya. They also fought against the Ahoms. By alienating both their neighbours they sealed their doom. An attack by **Alauddin Hussain Shah**, which was supported by the Ahoms led to the destruction of the city of **Kamtapur (near modern Cooch Bihar)** and the annexation of the kingdom to Bengal. The sultan appointed one of his sons as the governor of the area.

- The **eastern Brahmaputra** was at this time under **Suhungmung (c. 1497 – 1539 CE)**, who is considered to be one of the great rulers of the Ahom kingdom.
- He adopted the title of **Svarg Narayana**, which infers to the **rapid Hinduization of the Ahoms.**
- He not only repulsed the Muslim attack but also expanded his empire in all directions. **Shankara Deva, the Vaishnavite reformer**, belonged to this time and played a vital role in propagating Vaishnavism in the region.

→ ODISHA

- During medieval times, the **Hindu Gajapati rulers (c. 1435 – 1541 CE)** ruled over Kalinga (Odisha), large parts of **Andhra Pradesh and West Bengal**, and the eastern and central parts of **Madhya Pradesh and Jharkhand**.
- Gajapati means “king with an army of elephants”.
- In c. **1435 CE**, **Kapilendra Deva** founded the Gajapati dynasty after the decline of the last **eastern Ganga king, Bhanu Deva IV**.
- The Gajapati dynasty is also known as the “**Suryavamsi dynasty**”. The Gajapati rule marks a brilliant phase in Orissa.
- The rulers were **great builders and warriors**. They extended their rule in the south towards **Karnataka which brought them into conflict with Vijayanagara, the Reddis and the Bahmani sultans**.

- However, by the early 16th century, the Gajapati rulers lost significant portions of the southern dominion to Vijayanagara and Golconda and the Gajapatis were even ousted by the **Bhoi dynasty**.

GAJAPATI DYNASTY

Kapilendra Deva (c. 1435 – 1466 CE)

- He was the founder of the Gajapati dynasty. His empire extended from **Ganga in the north to Bidar in the south**.
- Around c. 1450 CE, he appointed his son **Hamvira Deva** as the governor of **Kondavidu** and **Rajahmundry**. Hamvira Deva conquered **Hampi**, the Vijayanagara capital and made its ruler, Mallikarjuna Raya, pay taxes.
- The rock edicts of **Srirangam temple (near Trichinapalli)** indicate that **Hamvira Deva captured Trichinapalli, Tanjore and Arcot** in the south.
- In c. 1464 CE, **Kapilendra** adopted the **title of Dakshina Kapileswara**.
- During his reign, the **Odia language was officially used as an administrative language**. Sarla Das, the famous Odia poet wrote the “**Odia Mahabharata**”.

Purushottama Deva (1466 and 1497 CE)

- Purushottam Deva was the second Suryavamsa Gajapati ruler. His father Gajapati Kapilendra Deva Routaraya, chose him as his heir to reign the Odishan Empire.
- This choice upset his elder brother **Hamvira Deva**, a **battle-hardened and successful warrior** who had been tasked by his father with conquering the southern lands and expeditions against the kingdom of Vijayanagara.
- Hamvira sought a **contract** with the Gajapati's adversary, **Bahamani Sultan Muhammad Shah III**.
- Muhammad Shah set demands for Hamvira Deva to recognise his suzerainty as ruler of Odisha and transfer the necessary provinces from his father's empire if he wanted to seize Rajamundry and Kondapalli, which were under the control of Purushottam Deva.
- In **1472**, **Hamvira Deva declared himself Gajapati** after gaining more than half of the territory of Purushottama Deva including Rajamundry and Kondapalli.
- Due to internal strife and terrible famine, the Bahamani Sultanate fell weak in 1476.
- **Purushottama Deva** took advantage of the situation and launched an invasion from the north, defeating his **elder brother Hamvira**, expelling the Bahamani garrisons, and reclaiming Rajamundry and Kondapalli for his dominion.
- He switched his focus to southern territories which Saluva Narasimha of Vijayanagara conquered during an internal dispute with his elder brother.
- He conquered the **Krishna-Godavari delta, and sections of Telangana**. He continued his march till he **imprisoned the Vijayanagara ruler at Udayagiri fort**.

Prataparudra Deva (c. 1497 – 1540 CE)

- In c. **1512 CE**, **Kalinga was invaded by Krishna Deva Raya** of the Vijayanagara kingdom and the army of the Gajapati kingdom suffered defeat.
- In c. **1522 CE**, **Quli Qutb Shah of Golconda ousted the Odia army** from the Krishna-Godavari tract.
- During his reign, the **Bhakti movement gained momentum under the influence of Sri Chaitanya**.

- Prataparuda Deva was greatly influenced by the works of Chaitanya and led an ascetic life after retiring himself.
- In c. 1541 CE, **Govinda Vidyadhara**, minister of Prataparudra Deva, rebelled against the weak rulers and murdered the two sons of Prataparudra Deva. He established the **Bhoi dynasty** which only ruled for a short period of time and came into conflict with neighbouring kingdoms.
- In c. 1559 CE, history repeated itself as **Makundra Deva, a minister of the Bhoi dynasty** assassinated the last two Bhoi rulers and ascended the throne.
- He is considered the last independent ruler of Odisha as the region witnessed a steady fall afterwards.
- In c. 1568 CE, Odisha came under the control of **Sulaiman Khan Karrani of the Karrani dynasty**, who was the ruler of the Bengal Sultanate.
- The year c. 1568 CE is important in the history of Odisha, as Odisha never emerged as an independent kingdom again.

Art and Architecture During Gajapati Dynasty

- A **Kapileswar Shaivite temple** was built in Bhubaneswar by Kapilendra Deva.
- Two **granite stone idols of Lord Jagannath and Balarama** as siblings riding horses and dressed for battle were placed in the temple by **Purushottam Deva**.
- The **idols of Uchistha or Kamada Ganesha and Gopala, which Purushottama Deva brought as a trophy of victory over Kanchi**, are currently housed on the grounds of Jagannath Temple in Puri
- A **Dhavalesvara temple** was constructed in Mancheswar, Cuttack district and a **Sarpeswar temple** in the village of Balarampur, near Kakhadi.
- The **Jagannath temple's audience hall** was built by Prataparudra in Puri.

→ KINGDOM OF MALWA

- Alauddin Khalji **conquered Malwa in c.1310 CE** and annexed it to the Delhi Sultanate. It remained part of the Delhi Sultanate **till the death of Firoz Shah Tughlaq**.
- The state of Malwa was situated on the **high plateau between the rivers Narmada and Tapti**. It commanded the trunk **routes between Gujarat and northern India** and also **between north and south India**. The geopolitical situation in northern India was such that if any of the powerful states of the region could extend its control over Malwa, it could also dominate entire north India.
- After the **invasion of Timur, in c. 1401 CE**, **Dilawar Khan Ghori** who belonged to the court of **Firoz Shah Tughlaq** threw off his allegiance to Delhi and became independent.
- **Dilawar** shifted the capital from **Dhar to Mandu**, a place that was highly defensible and which had a great deal of natural beauty. Dilawar Khan Ghori died in c.1405 CE and was succeeded by his son, **Alp Khan** who assumed the title '**Hoshang Shah**'.

Hoshang Shah (c. 1406 – 1435 CE)

- He was the **first formally appointed Islamic king of Malwa**. Hoshang Shah adopted a broad policy of **religious toleration**. He encouraged many Rajputs to settle in Malwa.
- From the **inscription of the Lalitpur temple**, which was constructed during his reign, it appears that **there was no restriction on building temples**.
- He **extended his patronage to the Jaina** who were the principal merchants and bankers of the area. For instance, **Nardeva Soni**, a successful merchant was his treasurer as well as one of his advisors.
- Hoshangabad in Madhya Pradesh (**earlier called Narmadapur**) was founded by Hoshang Shah. He also made Mandu one of the most impregnable forts of India.

Mahmud Khalji (c. 1436 – 1469 CE)

- Mahmud Khalji assassinated Mohammad, the son of Hoshang Shah and ascended to the throne. He is considered to be the most important Malwa ruler.
- He was an **ambitious monarch** who fought with almost all his neighbours – the Bahmani Sultans, the ruler of Gujarat, the rajas of Gondwana and Orissa and even the sultan of Delhi. However, his prime targets were the south Rajputana states especially Mewar.
- He **fought with Rana Kumbha of Mewar** and both the kingdoms claimed victory.
- Mahmud Khalji **erected a seven-storied column at Mandu** and **Rana Kumbha raised a tower of victory in Chittor**.

Ghiyas-ud-Din (c. 1469 – 1500 CE)

- Mahmud Khalji was succeeded by his eldest son, Ghiyas-ud-din. He was more interested in music and pleasure than his kingdom. He built the **Jahaz Mahal**.
- He was defeated by Rana Raimal of Chittor.

Mahmud Shah II (c. 1510 – 1531 CE)

- The last ruler of the **Khalji dynasty of Malwa**. He surrendered to **Bahadur Shah (Sultan of Gujarat)** after he lost the fort of Mandu in c.1531 CE.
- During the period c. 1531 – 1537 CE, Bahadur Shah controlled the kingdom, though the Mughal emperor Humayun captured it for a brief period (c. 1535- 36 CE).
- But in c.1542 CE, **Sher Shah Suri** defeated him and captured the kingdom.
- He appointed **Shujat Khan** as the governor and his son **Baz Bahadur** declared independence in c. 1555 CE.

Baz Bahadur (c. 1551- 1561 CE)

- He was the **last sultan of Malwa**. He was famous for his association with **queen Roopmati**.
- In c.1561 CE, he was defeated by Akbar's army led by **Pir Muhammad Khan and Adham Khan in the battle of Sarangpur**. Baz Bahadur fled to Khandesh.
- Pir Muhammad Khan attacked Khandesh and proceeded up to Burhanpur where he was **defeated and killed by a coalition of three powers – Tufail Khan of Berar, Miran Mubarak Shah II of Khandesh and Baz Bahadur**.
- The confederate army drove the Mughals out of Malwa and thus, the kingdom of Malwa was restored to Baz Bahadur, though for a short period.

- In c. **1562 CE**, Akbar again sent an army led by Abdullah Khan which defeated Baz Bahadur who fled to Chittor.
- In c. **1570 CE**, he surrendered to Akbar at Nagpur, and Malwa thus became a province of the Mughal empire.

→ GUJARAT

- Under the Delhi Sultanate, Gujarat was one of the **wealthiest provinces** owing to its **brilliant handicrafts, and flourishing sea-ports**.
- **Alauddin Khalji was the first sultan who annexed it to the Delhi Sultanate in c.1297 CE.** During the rule of Firoz Tughlaq, Gujarat had a liberal governor who encouraged the Hindu religion and also promoted the worship of idols.
- He was succeeded by **Zafar Khan, whose father Sadharan was a Rajput who had converted to Islam and had given his sister in marriage to Firoz Tughlaq.**
- After Timur's invasion of Delhi, both Gujarat and Malwa declared independence and **Zafar Khan (the then governor of Gujarat)** proclaimed himself an independent ruler in c.1407 CE. He assumed the title of **Muzaffar Shah and founded the Muzaffarid dynasty.**

MUZAFFARID DYNASTY

Ahmed Shah I (c.1411 – 1441)

- Grandson of Zafar Khan and is considered to be the real founder of the kingdom of Gujarat.
- He **shifted the capital from Patan to the new city of Ahmedabad** (its foundation was laid in c.1413 CE).
- Ahmed Shah tried to exercise his control over the Rajputana states in the Saurashtra region and also over the regions located on the Gujarat-Rajasthan border (Bundi, Dungarpur, and Jhalawar).
- In Saurashtra, he **defeated and captured the strong fort of Girnar**, but restored it to the raja on his promise to pay tribute.
- He attacked **Sidhpur**, the famous Hindu pilgrim centre. He **imposed the tax jizya** on the Hindus in Gujarat, but at the same time inducted Hindus into his government. For example, **Moti Chand and Manik Chand** (belonging to the trader community) were ministers in his government.
- He beautified the town with many magnificent palaces and bazaars, mosques and madrasas. He was quite influenced by the **rich architectural traditions of the Jains of Gujarat.**
- The **Jama Masjid** in Ahmedabad and the **Teen Darwaza** are fine examples of the style of architecture of his time.
- He fought against Muslim as well as Hindu rulers. His arch-rivals were the **Muslim rulers of Malwa**. The bitter rivalry between the two kingdoms weakened them and made it difficult for them to play a larger role in the politics of north India.
- After his death in c. 1441 CE, Muhammad Shah, his eldest son, occupied the throne. He was also known as **Zar-Baksh**. He was killed in c. 1451 CE by conspirators. Muhammad Shah was followed by two weak rulers.

- Later, nobles raised **Fateh Khan**, a grandson of Ahmed Shah to the throne. He was a very capable ruler and assumed the title of "**Mahmud Begarha**".

Mahmud Begarha (c. 1459 – 1511 CE)

- The most famous ruler of Gujarat was Mahmud Begarha. During his reign, Gujarat emerged as one of the most powerful states in the country.
- He was called **Begarha because he captured two important forts (garhs) – Girnar in Saurashtra (now Junagarh) and Champaner in south Gujarat.**
- Although the ruler of Girnar paid regular tributes to Ahmed Shah, Mahmud Begarha's ambition was to bring Saurashtra under his full control. The powerful fort of Girnar was considered suitable not only for administering Saurashtra but also as a **base for operations against Sindh**.
- Mahmud founded a new town at the foot of the hill called **Mustafabad**. It became the **second capital of Gujarat**.
- He captured the **fort of Champaner which was important to control Malwa and Khandesh**. Mahmud constructed a new town called **Muhammadabad near Champaner**. He laid out many beautiful gardens there and made it his principal place of residence.
- Mahmud sacked Dwarka**, on the grounds that it harboured pirates who preyed on the pilgrims travelling to Mecca.
- Mahmud Begarha led an **expedition against the Portuguese** who were interfering with Gujarat's trade with the countries of West Asia. For this, he sought help from the **ruler of Egypt but he was unsuccessful**.
- During the long and peaceful reign of Mahmud Begarha, **trade and commerce flourished**. He built many caravan sarais and inns for the travellers. He also worked to make roads safe for traffic.
- Although he did not receive any formal education, he patronised art and literature. During his reign, **many works were translated from Arabic to Persian**.

- His court poet was **Udayaraja who composed in Sanskrit** and wrote a book called **Raja Vinoda on Mahmud Begarha**.
 - His appearance was quite striking as he had a long flowing beard that reached his waist and his moustache was long enough to tie it over the head.
 - According to a **traveller Barbosa**, **Mahmud** was given some poison right from his childhood and if a fly settled on his hand, it immediately died. He was also famous for his voracious appetite.
 - Gujarat was annexed by Akbar in c.1573 CE.

→ MEWAR

- The rise of Mewar during the 15th century was an important factor in the political life of north India.
- With the **conquest of Ranthambore by Alauddin Khalji**, the power of Chauhans in Rajputana came to an end. After being overrun by the forces of Alauddin Khalji, Mewar had become relatively insignificant.
- Later in c. 1335 CE, **Rana Hammira (c. 1314 – 1378 CE) established the second Guhila dynasty of Chittor** and also became the **progenitor of the**

Sisodia clan, a branch of the Guhilot clan, to which every succeeding Maharana of Mewar belonged.

- He was the first ruler who started the use of the title “Rana” and also built the **Annapoorna Mata temple in Chittorgarh fort** in Rajasthan.
- After the assassination of Rana Hamirra’s grandson, Maharana Mokal, his son Rana Kumbha ascended the throne of Mewar.
- **Mewar (Udaipur) kingdom was originally called Medhpaaat.**

Rana Kumbha (c. 1433 – 1468 CE)

- Rana Kumbha raised the kingdom of Mewar to the status of a power to be reckoned with. After consolidating his position with great diplomacy and defeating his internal rivals, Kumbha conquered states like **Bundi, Kotah, Dungerpur**, etc.
- The conflicts with **Gujarat and Malwa occupied Kumbha** throughout his reign.
- Rana Kumbha had given shelter to a rival of Mahmud Khalji of Malwa and even attempted to install him on the throne.
- In retaliation, Mahmud Khalji had given shelter and encouragement to some of the rivals of Kumbha such as his brother Mokal.
- Mahmud Khalji of Malwa fought with Rana Kumbha and both claimed victory.
- Although sorely pressed from all sides, Rana Kumbha was largely able to maintain his position in Mewar.
- **Kumbhalgarh** was besieged several times by the Gujarat army, while **Mahmud Khalji raided Ajmer**. However, Kumbha was able to resist these attacks and retain possession of most of his conquests except some outlying areas like Ranthambore.
- Kumbha **patronised art and literature**. He himself **composed a number of books**. He was a **great veena player**.

- He patronised scholars like **Atri and Mahesh** who composed the inscriptions of the **Victory Tower (Kirti Stambha) at Chittor**.

- To protect his kingdom he built **five forts – Achalgarh, Kumbhalgarh, Kolana, Bairat and Maddan**. Some of the temples built during this period show that the art of stone cutting, sculpture were at a high level.
- He was **murdered by his own son, Udai** in order to gain the throne. He was, however, ousted by **Maharana Raimal, the younger son of Rana Kumbha**. Later, after another unfortunate, long fratricidal conflict with his brothers, **Rana Sanga (son of Raimal)** became the ruler of Mewar.

Rana Sanga (c. 1508 – 1528 CE)

- He was the **grandson of Rana Kumbha**. With his bravery, he established his supremacy over almost all Rajput states in Rajasthan.
- Apart from being a great warrior, he was also a visionary. Under his leadership, he was able to **unite various factions of Rajputs** who had broken up after the fall of the Gurjara-Pratihara kingdom.
- After consolidating his position at Mewar, **Rana Sanga moved his forces against the internally troubled neighbouring kingdom of Malwa** (as Malwa was disintegrating during this period).
- The ruler of Malwa, Mahmud II was wary of his rival Rajput wazir **Medini Rai's power**, so he asked for help from **Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and also from sultan Ibrahim Lodhi of Delhi**.

- Rana Sanga came to the aid of **Medini Rai**. Sanga's army along with the Rajput rebels from within Malwa not only defeated Malwa's army but also their supporting forces from Delhi. Thus, Malwa fell under Rana's military might.
- However, Rana Sanga **treated Mahmud II with generosity and restored his kingdom** even when he was defeated and taken as a prisoner by Rana Sanga.
- In c. **1518 CE**, the **Lodhi ruler Ibrahim Lodhi invaded Mewar** but suffered defeat at the hands of Rana Sanga **at Ghatoli (near Gwalior)**. Lodhi was again defeated at **Dholpur in c. 1519 CE**.
- According to some legends, Rana Sanga invited Babur to invade India in c. 1526 CE.
- But in c. 1527 CE, Rana fought against Babur in the famous **Battle of Khanwa (near Fatehpur Sikri)**. He was supported by the **contingents of Hasan Khan Mewati, Raja Medini Rai of Alwar and the Afghan Mahmud Lodhi**. Rana Sanga was wounded, fell unconscious from his horse and the Rajput army thought their leader was dead and fled in disorder, thus allowing the Mughals to win.
- In c. **1528 CE**, he again fought Babur at the **Battle of Chanderi** to help Medini Rai who was attacked by Babur. But he fell sick and died in the camp.

→ SUFI ORDERS

- Sufism was a **liberal reform movement within Islam**. It had its **origin in Persia and spread into India in the eleventh century**.
- It is also known as **Tasawwuf**. The term Sufi, the word is largely believed to stem from the **Arabic word suf**, which refers to the **wool** that was traditionally worn by mystics and ascetics. Sufi schools are found in all sects of Islam.
- Sufi scholars and preachers trace **their ideas and practices to some verses of the Quran** and traditions but give them a mystic representation.
- Also, they have adopted various practices from other major religions as well. **Ex: Guru-shishya tradition which is associated with Hinduism**.
- The **sufi orders are broadly divided into two-**
 - **Ba-shara** that is those **who followed Islamic law (shara)**, and
 - **Be-shara** that is those which were not bound by it.
- Both types of orders prevailed in India, the latter being followed more by wandering saints. Although these saints did not establish an order, some of them became figures of popular veneration, often for Hindus and Muslims alike.
- Of the **Bashara movements only two acquired significant influence** and following in north India during 13th and 14th centuries. These were **Chishti and Suhrawardi silsilahs**.
- Sufis are organized into various silsilahs. Some of these silsilahs are: Chishti order, Suhrawardi order, Qadri silsila, shattari silsila, Firdausi silsila and Naqshbandi order.
- The **first Sufi saint Shaikh Ismail of Lahore** started preaching his ideas.
- The **most famous** of the Sufi saints of India was **Khwaja Muinuddin Chishti**, who settled in Ajmer which became the centre of his activities. He had a number of disciples who are called Sufis of the Chishti order. Another famous Sufi saint was **Nizamuddin Auliya** who belonged to the Chishti order.

- Another well known Sufi saint was **Bahauddin Zakariya** who came under the influence of another famous mystic **Shihabuddin Suhrawardi**. His branch of Sufi saints was known as the Sufis of the Suhrawardi Order.
- These Sufi saints are revered even today by not only Muslims but by a large number of Hindus. Their tombs have become popular places of pilgrimage for both communities.

Message

- Sufism stressed the **elements of love and devotion as effective means of the realisation of God**.
- **Love of God meant love of humanity** and so the Sufis **believed service to humanity was tantamount to service to God**.
- In Sufism, **self discipline** was considered an essential condition to gain knowledge of God by sense of perception.
- While **orthodox Muslims emphasise external conduct**, the Sufis lay stress on **inner purity**. The Sufis consider love and devotion as the only means of attaining salvation.
- According to them one must have the **guidance of a pir or guru**, without which **spiritual development is impossible**.
- Sufism also inculcated a **spirit of tolerance** among its followers.
- Other ideas emphasised by Sufism are **meditation, good actions, repentance for sins, performance of prayers and pilgrimages, fasting, charity and suppression of passions** by ascetic practices.
- These liberal and unorthodox features of Sufism had a profound influence on medieval Bhakti saints.

Music

- **Music plays a prominent part in the life of a Sufi**.
- Sufi saints made themselves popular by adopting **musical recitations called “sama”**, to create a mood of nearness to God.
- **Qawwali** is a form of sufi devotional music popular in South Asia.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1. **Silsila** – The word Silsila means Sufi order which signifies a continuous lin between master and disciple. Examples of Silsila are – Chisti, Suhrawardi, etc.
2. **Dargah** – The word Dargah means tomb of a Sufi Saint. Example – Ajmer Sharif is the tomb of Khwaja Moinuddin Chisti.
3. **Pir Murid** – ‘Pir’ means Master or Teacher, and ‘Murid’ means disciple or Student.
4. **Khanqah** – The word Khanqah means residence of Pir(Master) living with his disciples.
5. **Sama** – The word Sama signifies music and dance performed by Sufi Saints.

- In the later period, **Akbar, the Mughal emperor**, appreciated Sufi doctrines which **shaped his religious outlook and religious policies**.
- When the Sufi movement was becoming popular in India, about the same time the Bhakti cult was gaining strength among the Hindus.
- The two parallel movements based on the doctrines of love and selfless devotion contributed a great deal to bringing the two communities closer together.

Sufi order	Founder and place	Key points
Chishti	Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti, Ajmer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is the oldest silsila of India established by Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti in Ajmer. He came to India during the reign of Muhammad Ghori. Sultan Iltutmish built Muinuddin Chisti's dargah at Ajmer. It was later enlarged by the Mughal Emperor Humayun Chishti saints led an austere life and did not accept private property and state assistance. He popularised music recitations called Sama (Mehboob-i-ilahi) Other notable saints of this order were Hamiduddin Nagori, Qutubuddin Bhaktiyar Kaki, Baba Farid and Nizamuddin Auliya. Baba Farid preferred to shun the company of rulers and nobles and kept aloof from the state. For him renunciation meant distribution of food and clothes to the poor. His outlook was so broad and humane that some his verses are later found quoted in the Adi-Granth of the Sikhs. Amongst his followers was the noted writer Amir Khusrau. Sultan Iltutmish dedicated the Qutub Minar to Qutubuddin Bhaktiyar Kaki. Nizamuddin Auliya adopted yogic breathing excercises so much so that the yogis called him 'sidh' or perfect.
Suhrawardi	Shiabuddin Suhrawari, Multan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It was brought to India by Bahauddin Zakaria who established this order in Multan. He wrote the Awarif ul-Maarif, or "The Knowledge of the Spiritually Learned" Another Suhravardi-Sufi Saint, Shaikh Sharfuddin Yahya Manairi propagated Sufi-doctrines in Bihar. He was a good scholar and compiled several books. He laid great stress on the service of humanity. Unlike Chishti saints, they lived a life of luxury and accepted state assistance.
Firdausi	Badruddin Samarqandi, Bihar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It was influenced by Suhrawardi order.
Naqshbandi	Khwaja Baqi Billah	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This Order emphasized on observance of the laws of Shariat and denounced all innovations which were added afterwards to Islamic doctrines.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi was the successor of Khwaja Baqi Billah.
The Qadri order	Abdul-Qadir Gilani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Qadri silsilah was popular in Punjab. Sheikh Abdul Qadir and his sons were supporters of the Mughals under Akbar. • The pirs of this Order supported the concept of Wahdat al Wajud (this doctrine postulates that God and His creation are one). • Among the famous Sufis of this order was Miyan Mir who had enrolled the Mughal princess Jahanara and her brother Dara Shikoh as his disciples.
Miyan Bayazid Ansari (Pir Roshan)	Rashaniya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He wrote the book Khai-ul-Byan. • He introduced the Rashaniya order during Akbar's reign.
Nuruddin Noorani (Wali)	Risi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He opposed orthodox Muslims. • He is known as Alamdar-e-Kashmir. • He spread his teachings or message through poems, commonly known as shruks.

→ BHAKTI SAINTS

Bhakti Saints	Key points
Adi Sankara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the ninth century, Adi Sankara started a Hindu revivalist movement giving a new orientation to Hinduism. • His doctrine of Advaita or Monism was too abstract to appeal to the common man. It states that both the individual self (Atman) and Brahman are the same, and knowing this difference causes liberation. • Moreover, there was a reaction against the Advaita concept of Nirgunabrahman (God without attributes) with the emergence of the idea of Sagunabrahman (God with attributes).
Ramanuja (11th – 12th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the twelfth century, Ramanuja, who was born at Sriperumbudur near modern Chennai, preached Visishtadvaita. • According to him God is Sagunabrahman. The creative process and all the objects in creation are real but not illusory as was held by Sankaracharya. • Therefore, God, soul, matter are real. But God is inner substance and the rest are his attributes. • He also advocated prabattimarga or path of self-surrender to God. He invited the downtrodden to Vaishnavism.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He emphasized on Bhakti over knowledge to attain God.
Nimabarka (12th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was a Vaishnavite saint and believed in the philosophy of dualism or Dvaita (creator is different from creation). • It states that the Brahman is the highest reality, the controller of all. • He worshipped Radha-Krishna and established his ashram in Vrindavana.
Madhvacharya (12th – 13th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the thirteenth century, Madhava from Kannada region propagated Dvaita or dualism of Jivatma and Paramatma. • According to his philosophy, the world is not an illusion but a reality. God, soul, matter is unique in nature. • Bhakti as the route to eternal salvation. • He was against the ideas of Shankara and Ramanuja. • He established Brahma Samapradaya.
Ramananda (15th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ramananda was born at Allahabad. • He was originally a follower of Ramanuja. • Later he founded his own sect and preached his principles in Hindi at Banaras and Agra. • He was a worshipper of Rama. • He was the first to employ the vernacular medium to propagate his ideas. • Simplification of worship and emancipation of people from the traditional caste rules were his two important contributions to the Bhakti movement. • He opposed the caste system and chose his disciples from all sections of society disregarding caste. • His disciples were: a) Kabir, a Muslim weaver b) Raidasa, a cobbler c) Sena, a barber d) Sadhana, a butcher e) Dhanna, a Jat farmer f) Naraharai, a goldsmith and g) Pipa, a Rajput prince. • Adi Granth (the sacred scripture of Sikhism) contains some of his preaching's.
Kabir (15th – 16th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Among the disciples of Ramananda, the most famous was Kabir. He was born near Banaras to a brahmin widow. But he was brought up by a Muslim couple who were weavers by profession. • He possessed an inquiring mind and while in Benares learnt much about Hinduism. He became familiar with Islamic teachings also and Ramananda initiated him into the higher knowledge of Hindu and Muslim religious and philosophical ideas. • Kabir's object was to reconcile Hindus and Muslims and establish harmony between the two sects.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He denounced idolatry and rituals, pilgrimage, bathing in holy rivers and laid great emphasis on the equality of man before God. He emphasised the essential oneness of all religions by describing Hindu and Muslims ‘as pots of the same clay’. Kabir strongly denounced caste system, especially the practice of untouchability. He was opposed to all kinds of discrimination between human beings, whether on basis or caste or religion, race, family or wealth. To him Rama and Allah, temple and mosque were the same. He regarded devotion to God as an effective means of salvation and urged that to achieve this one must have a pure heart, free from cruelty, dishonesty, hypocrisy and insincerity. He is regarded as the greatest of the mystic saints and his followers are called Kabirpanthis.
Ravidas (15th – 16th)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He did not believe in idol worship. Adi Granth contains some of his preaching's. Mira Bai was his disciple.
Dadu Dayal (16th – 17th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was Kabir’s disciple and did not believe in idol worship and caste system. His main seat of influence was Rajasthan. He believed in leading a householder's life and was once summoned by Akbar to Fatehpur Sikri for religious discussions.
Chaitanya Mahaprabhu (15th – 16th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chaitanya was another well-known saint and reformer of Bengal who popularised the Krishna cult. He renounced the world, became an ascetic and wandered all over the country preaching his ideas. He proclaimed the universal brotherhood of man and condemned all distinction based on religion and caste. He emphasised love and peace and showed great sympathy to the sufferings of other people, especially that of the poor and the weak. He believed that through love and devotion, song and dance, a devotee can feel the presence of God. He accepted disciples from all classes and castes and his teachings are widely followed in Bengal even today. He established Gaudiya Vaishnava dharma in Bengal and believed in advaita or non-dualism. He was among the few saints who did not oppose idol worship. He popularized the medium of Kirtana in Bhakti.
Vallabhacharya (15th -16th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He established Rudra Sampradyaya and was a contemporary of Chaitanya Mahaprabhu. He propagated Pushti Marga and Bhakti Marga to attain God.

Surdas 16th – 17th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was the contemporary of Akbar and Jahangir. • He was a Krishna devotee and believed in idol worship. • His major composition Sur Sagar was completed during Jahangir's reign.
Tulsidas 16th – 17th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was the contemporary of Akbar and wrote Ramacharitamanas in Awadhi language. • His other compositions include Dohavali, Gitavali and Kavitavali.

Maharashtra

- **Gnanadeva** was the founder of the Bhakti Movement in Maharashtra in the **thirteenth century**. It was called **Maharashtra dharma**. He wrote a **commentary of Bhagavat Gita called Gnaneshwari**.
- **Namadeva, thirteenth century**, preached the gospel of love. He opposed idol worship and priestly domination. He also **opposed the caste system**.
- In the **sixteenth century**, **Ekanatha opposed caste distinctions** and sympathetic towards the lower castes. He composed many lyrics and his bhajans and kirtans were famous.
- Another Bhakti saint of Maharashtra **was Tukaram, a contemporary of Sivaji**. He was responsible for creating a background for Maratha nationalism. He opposed all social distinctions.

Importance of the Bhakti Movement

- The importance of the Bhakti movement was very great. Various preachers spoke and wrote in the regional languages. So, the Bhakti movement provided an **impetus for the development of regional languages such as Hindi, Marathi, Bengali, Kannada, etc.**
- Through these languages they made direct appeal to the masses. As the **caste system was condemned by the Bhakti saints**, the lower classes were raised to a position of great importance.
- Nath Panthi movement **challenging the caste system and superiority of the Brahmins** had gained great popularity.
- The importance of **women in society was also increased** because the Bhakti movement. Moreover, the Bhakti movement gave to the people a simple religion, without complicated rituals. They were required to show sincere devotion to God.
- The **new idea of a life of charity and service** to fellow people developed.
- They emphasized the **fundamental unity of God and the created world**.

→ SIKHISM

GURU NANAK

- Guru Nanak, the **founder of the Sikh faith, was born in 1469 AD at Talwandi** (near Lahore in Pakistan), now known as **Nankana Sahib** in Pakistan and belonged to **Bedi gotra**.

- Guru Nanak received his early education in **Sanskrit and Persian**.
- He was **one of the greatest saints of the Bhakti movement**.
- Guru Nanak (1469–1539) was the **first Guru**. He travelled widely before establishing a centre at **Kartarpur** (*Dera Baba Nanak on the river Ravi*).
- Regular worship that consisted of the singing of his own hymns was established there for his followers.
- Irrespective of their **former creed, caste or gender, his followers ate together in the common kitchen (langar)**.
- The sacred space thus **created by Guru Nanak, known as dharmasal**. It is now known as **Gurdwara**.
- The three important percepts of Guru Nanak are:
 - Contemplation of One God (**nam- japna**);
 - Earning one's livelihood (**kirat karna**) and
 - Sharing one's earnings with others (**vand chhakna**).
- To practise his teachings of equality, Guru Nanak started the twin institutions of **Sangat and Pangat**, emphasizing that all **sit in a congregation and while partaking food from the community kitchen** should sit in one line without distinction of high and low or rich and poor.
- Guru Nanak preached through **kirtans, bhajans and ragas**.
- Before his death in **1539**, Guru Nanak appointed one of his followers as his successor.
- His name was **Lehna**, but he came to be known as **Guru Angad**, signifying that he was a part of Guru Nanak himself.

Sikhism - Significance

- Guru Nanak preached a message of **compassion and understanding, criticizing Hindu and Muslim blind traditions**.
- Guru Nanak's enlightened leadership of this new religion was passed down to nine Gurus in succession.
- **Influences:** The **Bhakti movement and Vaishnava Hinduism** affected the formation of Sikhism. Sikhism, on the other hand, **was not merely a continuation of the Bhakti movement**.
- Sikhism arose during the Mughal Empire's sway over the region.
- The Mughal rulers executed two Sikh gurus, **Guru Arjan and Guru Tegh Bahadur**.
- The **Khalsa was founded as an order for freedom of conscience and religion** in response to the persecution of Sikhs.
- **Guru Gobind Singh**, the last living Guru, founded the **Khalsa order (meaning "The Pure")** of soldier-saints. The Khalsa upholds the highest Sikh characteristics of **devotion, commitment, and social awareness**.
- The Khalsa are men and women who have been baptized in the Sikh faith and who adhere to the **Sikh Code of Conduct and Conventions**, as well as wearing the five K's - Kesh (uncut hair), Kangha (a wooden comb), Kara (an iron bracelet), Kachera (cotton underwear), and Kirpan (an iron knife).
- Sikhism does not have priests, as Guru Gobind Singh eliminated them. They had become corrupt and egotistical, according to the Guru.

- The **Guru Granth Sahib (granthi)** has only custodians among Sikhs, and any Sikh is free to read it in the Gurdwara (a Sikh temple) or at home.
- The **Gurudwara is open to people of all religions**. At every Gurdwara, there is a free community kitchen that serves meals to people of all religions. It is called **Langer**.
- This institution was founded by Guru Nanak and defines the essential Sikh principles of service, humility, and equality.

→ TEN GURUS

Guru Nanak (1469 – 1539)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the first Sikh Guru. He is the founder of Sikhism.
Guru Angad Dev (1504 – 1552)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the second Sikh Guru. Guru Angad compiled the compositions of Guru Nanak, to which he added his own in a new script known as Gurmukhi. Gurmukhi became the sole medium for the sacred writings of the Sikhs. Guru Granth Sahib, the holy book of Sikhs, is written in Gurmukhi script.
Guru Amar Dass (1479 – 1574)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the third Sikh Guru. He strengthened the Sikh movement by starting the institutions of Manjis and Piris. Manji means Male Sikh Preacher and Piri means Female Sikh Preacher for religious preaching.
Guru Ram Dass (1534 – 1581)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the fourth Sikh Guru. He laid the foundation of the holy city of Amritsar, which later developed as the spiritual capital of the Sikh faith. After Guru Ram Das, the guruship became hereditary.
Guru Arjun Dev (1563 – 1606)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the fifth Sikh Guru. He was the son and successor of Guru Ram Dass. He built the Harmandar, which is popularly known as the Golden Temple, and compiled and installed the Holy Book, the Guru Granth, therein.
Guru Hargobind (1595 – 1644)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the sixth Sikh Guru. He built Akal Takhat, the Throne of the Immortal, and declared it as the centre of Sikh temporal authority.
Guru Har Rai (1630 – 1661)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the seventh Sikh Guru. He continued the mission of his predecessors.
Guru Har Kishan (1656 – 1664)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He is the eighth Sikh Guru. He cured the victims of smallpox in Delhi and is remembered in the daily Sikh prayer as the one whose very sight dispels all miseries.

Guru Teg Bahadur (1621 – 1675)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He is the ninth Sikh Guru. • As a boy, Tegh Bahadur was called Tyag Mal because of his ascetic nature. • He was only 13 when he distinguished himself in a battle against a Mughal chieftain. His bravery and swordsmanship in the battle earned him the name of Tegh Bahadur. • He founded the city of Anandpur Sahib in Punjab in 1665.
Guru Govind Singh (1666 – 1708)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He is the tenth and last Sikh Guru. • The last Guru organised the Sikhs into a disciplined, military order of Sikh-saints called Khalsa (the pure). • He established the five symbols of Sikhism.

→ MUGHALS

BABUR (1526-1530)

- Babur is the founder of the Mughal Empire in India.
- He was a descendant of **Timur (on his father's side)** and **Genghis Khan (on his Mother's side)**.
- His original name was **Zahiruddin Muhammad**.
- In 1494 at the age of 11, Babur became the ruler of **Farghana** succeeding Umar Shaikh Mirza, his father.
- **Daulat Khan**, the most powerful noble of Punjab, who was discontented with Ibrahim Lodhi, invited Babur to invade India.
- He undertook four expeditions to India in order to conquer it between the **years 1519 and 1523**.

Babur's Military Conquests

- In **1504**, Babur occupied Kabul.
- In **1524**, Babur occupied Lahore but had to retreat to Kabul after Daulat Khan turned against him.
- In **November 1525**, Babur attacked and occupied Punjab again.
- On **21st April 1526**, Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the **First Battle of Panipat** and quickly occupied Delhi. Despite vast and superior troops, Ibrahim Lodi lost in the battle due to Babur's superior strategy and use of artillery.
- The **First Battle of Panipat marked the foundation** of Mughal dominion in India.
- Babur conquered Delhi and sent his son Humayun to seize Agra.
- Babur announced himself as "**Emperor of Hindustan**".

RANA SANGHA & BABUR

- Rana Sangha of Mewar gave the toughest resistance to Babur's expansion plans.
- On **March 16, 1527**, Rana Sangha, along with rulers of **Marwar, Amber, Gwalior, Ajmer and Chanderi** and **Sultan Mahmood Lodi** (whom Rana Sangha had

acknowledged as ruler of Delhi) met **Babur in a decisive contest at Kanhwa**, a village near Agra. The aim was to prevent the imposition of another foreign repression.

- Babur succeeded over them by using similar tactics as in the Battle of Panipat. Then, he took on the title of “**Ghazi**”.
- In the year **1528**, **Chanderi was captured by Babur from Rajput king Medini Rai**.
- On **May 6, 1529**, Babur met the allied Afghans of Bihar and Bengal on the **banks of Gogra**, near Patna and defeated them. With this battle, Babur occupied a considerable portion of northern India.
- On December 26, 1530, Babur died at Agra aged 40. His body was first laid at **Arambagh in Agra** but was later taken to Kabul, where it was buried.

Estimate of Babur

- He was an eminent scholar in **Arabic and Persian**.
- His mother tongue was **Chaghatai Turkic**.
- He wrote his memoirs, **Tuzuk-i-Baburi in Turki language**.
- Though an orthodox Sunni, Babur was not bigoted or led by religious divines. At a time when there was a bitter sectarian feud between the Shias and Sunnis in Iran and Turan, his court was free from sectarian and theological conflicts.

Significance of Babur's advent into India

- For the first time since the downfall of Kushan Empire, **Kabul and Qandhar became an intergral part of an empire comprising parts of north India**.
- Economically also these were important as they **strengthened the foreign trade** since these two towns were the starting points for caravans meant for China in the east, and Mediterranean ports in the west.
- Babur and his successors were able to give **India security from external invasions** for almost 200 years.
- Babur introduced a **new mode of warfare in India**. Although gunpowder was known in India earlier, Babur showed what a **skilled combination of artillery and cavalry** could achieve. His victories led to rapid popularisation of gunpowder and artillery in India.
- He was a **keen naturalist** and has **described the fauna and flora of India in considerable detail**. He laid out a number of **formal gardens with running water**, thereby establishing a tradition of gardening.
- Babur introduces a **new concept of the state which was to be based on the strength and prestige of the Crown, absence of religious and sectarian bigotry** and careful fostering of culture and fine arts.

HUMAYUN (1530-1540, 1555-1556)

- Humayun was the eldest son of Babur.
- Humayun **means “fortune”** but he remained the most unfortunate ruler of the Mughal Empire.
- Six months after his succession, Humayun besieged the fortress of **Kalinjar in Bundelkhand**, gained a decisive victory over Afghans at Douhra and **drove out Sultan Mahmood Lodhi from Jaunpur**, and even defeated Bahadur Shah of Gujarat. His victories, however, were short-lived due to the weakness of his character.

- Humayun had **three brothers, Kamran, Askari and Hindal**

- Humayun divided the empire among his brothers but this proved to be a great blunder on his part.
- **Kamran was given Kabul and Kandahar.**
- **Sambhal and Alwar were given to Askari and Hindal respectively.**
- Humayun captured Gujarat from Bahadur Shah and appointed **Askari as its governor**
- But soon Bahadur Shah recovered Gujarat from Askari who fled from there.
- In the east, **Sher Khan became powerful. Humayun marched against him and in the Battle of Chausa, held in 1539**, Sher Khan destroyed the Mughal army and Humayun escaped from there.
- Humayun reached Agra to negotiate with his brothers.
- In **1540, in the Battle of Bilgram or Ganges also known as Battle of Kanauj**, Humayun was forced to fight with Sher Khan alone and after losing his kingdom, Humayun became an exile for the next fifteen years.
- During his wanderings in deserts of Sindh, Humayun married **Hamida Banu Begum**, daughter of Sheikh Ali Amber Jaini, who had been a preceptor of Humayun's brother Hindal.
- On **November 23, 1542**, Humayun's wife gave birth to **Akbar**.
- Amarkot's Hindu chief **Rana Prasad** promised Humayun to help him to conquer **Thatta (in Sind)**.
- However, Humayun could not conquer Bhakker or secure it. Thus, he left India and lived under the generosity of **Shah Tahmashp of Persia**.
- Shah of Persia agreed to help Humayun and lend him a force on a condition to confirm to **Shia creed**, to have the **Shah's name proclaimed in his Khutba** and to give away **Kandhar to him on his success**.
- In **1545**, with **Persian help (Safavid Dynasty)**, Humayun captured Kandhar and Kabul but refused to cede Kandhar to Persia.
- Later, he defeated his brothers Kamran and Askari.
- In **1555**, Humayun defeated the Afghans and recovered the Mughal throne.
- After six months, he died in 1556 due to his fall from the staircase of his library.
- Humayun was kind and generous, though he was not a good General and warrior.
- He also loved painting and wrote poetry in the Persian language.

→ SHERSHAH (INTERREGNUM)

- Sher Shah was the founder of **Sur Dynasty**. His original name was **Farid**.
- He was the **son of Hasan Khan**, a jagirdar of Sasaram in Bihar.
- He was given the **title Sher Khan** for his bravery under the Afghan Rule of Bihar.
- Sher Shah Sur's conquests include **Bundelkhand, Malwa, Multan, Punjab, and Sind**.
- His empire occupied the whole of North India except Assam, Gujarat, Kashmir, and Nepal.

- Though his rule lasted for only 5 years, he has organized an excellent administrative system.
- The king was aided by four important ministers.

- **Diwan –i- Wizarat or Wazir** – in charge of Revenue and Finance
- **Diwan-i-Ariz** – in charge of Army
- **Diwan-i-Rasalat** – Foreign Minister
- **Diwan-i-Insha** – Minister for Communications

- Sher Shah's empire was divided into **forty-seven Sarkars**
- Each sarkar was further divided into **various Parganas and in charge of various officers.**

- **Shiqdar** – Military Officer
- **Amin** – Land Revenue
- **Fotedar** – Treasurer
- **Karkuns** – Accountants

- Under Sher Shah, the land revenue administration was well organized. The land survey was sensibly done.
- All cultivable lands were classified into **three classes – good, middle and bad.**
- The state's share was **one-third of the average production and it was paid in cash or crop.**
- Sher Shah introduced new **copper coins called “Dam”**. It is believed that this coin is one of the possible sources for the English phrase “I don't give a dam(n)”, due to its small worth.
- Police were **competently restructured** and crime was less during his regime.
- Shah **borrowed many ideas like the branding of horses from Alauddin Khalji.**
- For the convenience of the travellers Sher Shah built **sarais at the distance of every two kos (about 8 km)**. It was a fortified lounge or inn where the travellers could pass the night and also keep their good in safe custody. Separate lodgings for muslims and hindus were provided in these lodgings.
- Many **sarais in turn developed into market towns (qasbas)** to which peasants flocked to sell their produce. The sarais were also used as **stages for the news service or dak-chowkis**. In this was Sher Shah kept himself informed about the developments in the vast empire.
- Sher Shah paid great attention to fostering trade and commerce and the improvement of communications in his kingdom. He had also developed the communications by laying four important highways.

- Sonargaon to Sind (**restoration of the Grand Trunk Road**)
- Agra to Berhampur
- Jodhpur to Chittor
- Lahore to Multan

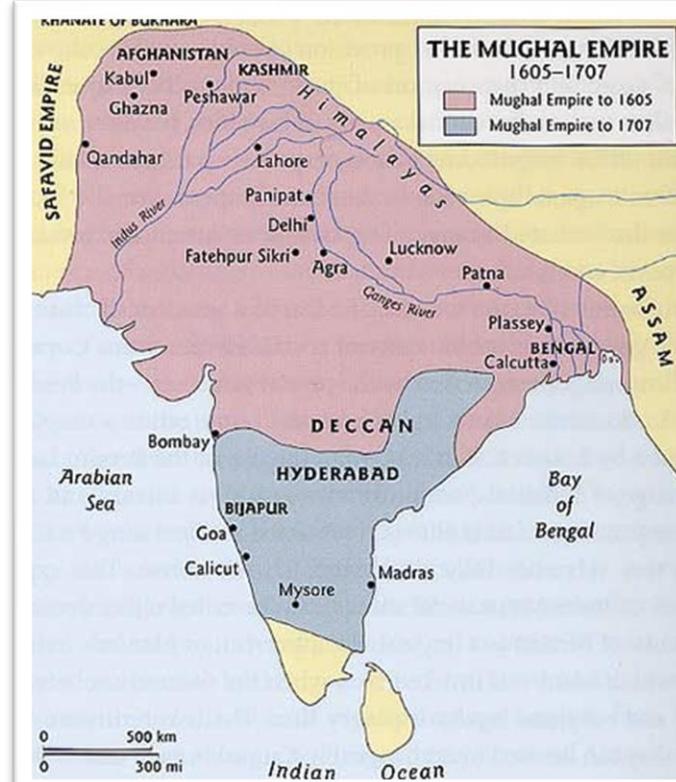
Estimate of Sher Shah

- Sher Shah remained a pious Muslim and generally tolerant towards other religions.
- He also **employed Hindus** in important offices.

- The old fort called **Purana Qila** and its mosque was built during his period.
- He also built a **Mausoleum at Sasaram**, which is considered as one of the masterpieces of Indian architecture.
- The famous Hindi work **Padmavat by Malik Muhammad Jayasi was written during his reign.**
- In 1545, Sher Shah died and his successors ruled till 1555 later when Humayun reconquered India.

→ AKBAR (1556-1605 AD)

- Akbar was the greatest monarchs of the Mughal dynasty. He was the son of Humayun and Hamida Banu Begum, born at Amarkot in c. 1542 CE.
- When Humayun fled to Iran, young Akbar was captured by his uncle **Kamran**, but he treated him well. Akbar was reunited with his parents after the capture of Qandahar.
- When Humayun died, **Akbar was at Kalanaur** in Punjab, commanding operations against the Afghan rebels there.
- He was **crowned at Kalanaur in c. 1556 CE** at the young age of 13 years and 4 months.
- During the first few years of Akbar's reign (c. 1556 – 1560 CE), **Bairam Khan** acted as his regent. Bairam Khan was Humayun's confidante and gained the title of **Khan-i-Khanan**.
- Bairam Khan represented Akbar in the **Second Battle of Panipat** (c. 1556 CE) with **Hemu Vikramaditya (wazir of Adil Shah of Bengal)** who led the Afghan forces.
- During the regency period of Bairam Khan, Mughal territories were extended from **Kabul up to Jaunpur in the east, and Ajmer in the west**. Gwalior was also captured.
- **Bairam Khan** emerged as the most powerful noble and **started appointing his own supporters on important positions** neglecting the old nobles. This caused resentment among other nobles who managed to influence Akbar as well. The growing arrogance of Bairam Khan also aggravated the problem.
- Akbar removed him and gave him the option of serving at the court or anywhere outside it or retiring to Mecca. Bairam Khan chose Mecca but on his way was killed by an



Afghan at Patan near Ahmedabad. Bairam's wife and his young child were brought to Akbar at Agra.

- Akbar **married his widow** and brought up Bairam's child as his own who later became famous as **Abdur Rahim Khan-i-Khanan**, a noted Hindi poet and an influential noble.
- Akbar had to face rebellions from many groups and individuals in the nobility. This included his foster mother, **Maham Anaga** and her relations, particularly her son, **Adham Khan**.
- **Uzbeks** held important positions in eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Malwa. Between c. 1561- 1567 CE, they broke out in rebellion several times.
- Encouraged by these rebellions, Akbar's half brother, **Mirza Hakim**, who had seized control of Kabul advanced into Punjab and besieged Lahore.
- The Uzbek rebel nobles declared **Mirza Hakim as the emperor of Hindustan**. However, by sheer grit, determination and a certain amount of luck, Akbar overcame these rebellions.
- Mirza Hakim was forced to flee to Kabul and the rebellion of the Mirzas was crushed, while the Uzbeks were completely routed by c. 1567 CE.

EARLY EXPANSION OF THE EMPIRE (C. 1560- 1576 CE)

Conquest of Gwalior, Malwa and Gondwana

- The first expedition was sent to **capture Gwalior (c. 1559-1560 CE)** before moving towards Malwa.
- **Adham Khan**, son of Akbar's foster mother, Maham Anaga defeated the ruler of Malwa, **Baz Bahadur** (c. 1561 CE). Due to the senseless cruelties of Adham Khan and his successor, there was a reaction against the Mughals which enabled Baz Bahadur to recover Malwa. After successfully dealing with a number of rebellions, Akbar sent another expedition to Malwa. Baz Bahadur had to flee and he took shelter under the Rana of Mewar. Later he moved from one place to another and finally surrendered at Akbar's court and was appointed as a Mughal mansabdar. Thus, Malwa came under the Mughal rule.
- The kingdom of **Garh-Katanga (Gondwana)** included the **Narmada Valley** and the northern parts of present-day Madhya Pradesh. It was ruled by **Durgavati, the Chandella princess from Mahoba**. In c.1564 CE, **Asaf Khan, the Mughal governor of Allahabad** he attacked Gondwana; Rani Durgavati fought bravely but lost the battle. She stabbed herself to death and Gondwana was captured by **Asaf Khan**.
- Akbar later **restored the kingdom of Garh-Katanga to Chandra Shah**, the younger son of Sangram Shah, after taking ten forts to round off the kingdom of Malwa.

Conquest of Rajasthan

- Akbar was well aware of the importance of the Rajput kingdoms and wanted them as allies in order to establish a large empire.
- The Rajput policy of Akbar was notable. He married the Rajput princess **Jodha Bai, daughter of Raja Bharamal of Amber**.
- He inducted Rajputs into Mughal services and many of them rose to the position of military generals. **Bhagwant Das**, son of Raja Bharamal was appointed joint governor of Lahore, his son **Man Singh was appointed the governor of Bihar and Bengal**.

- The **Rajput kingdoms Merta and Jodhpur** were captured without much resistance.
- A major step in his campaign against the Rajput states was the **siege of Chittor** which was considered a key to central Rajasthan. In c. 1568 CE, Chittor fell after a gallant siege of 6 months. At the advice of his nobles, **Rana Udai Singh** retired to the hills, leaving the famous warriors – **Jaimal and Patta** in charge of the fort..
- The Ranas of Mewar continued to defy despite several defeats. In the famous **Battle of Haldighati**, **Rana Pratap Singh, ruler of Mewar** was defeated by the Mughal army led by **Man Singh in 1576**.
- After the fall of Chittor, **Ranthambhore (the most powerful fortress in Rajasthan) and Kalinjar were conquered**. As a result of these successful conquests, most of the Rajput Rajas, including those of Bikaner and Jaisalmer submitted to Akbar.
- By c. **1570 CE, Akbar** had conquered almost the whole of Rajasthan.
- In spite of the subjugation of the whole of Rajasthan, there was no hostility between the Rajputs and the Mughals. **Akbar's Rajput policy was combined with broad religious toleration**.
- He **abolished the pilgrim tax** and the practice of forcible conversion of prisoners of war.
- In c. **1564 CE, he abolished the jizya** which was often considered a symbol of Muslim domination and superiority.
- The **Rajput policy of Akbar proved beneficial to the Mughal empire as well as to the Rajputs**. The alliance secured to the Mughal empire the services of the bravest warriors in India. The steadfast loyalty of the Rajputs became an important factor in the consolidation and expansion of the empire.

Conquest of Gujarat, Bihar and Bengal

- Since the **death of Bahadur Shah, Gujarat** was in a state of confusion.. Akbar did not want Gujarat which was a rich province to become a rival centre of power. In c. **1572 CE, Akbar advanced on Ahmedabad via Ajmer and defeated Muzaffar Shah, the Gujarat ruler** without much resistance.
- Akbar built the **Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri to celebrate the win of Gujarat**. Akbar then turned his attention towards Broach, Baroda and Surat. In a short span of time, most of the principalities of Gujarat were brought under Mughal control.
- Akbar **organised Gujarat into a province and placed it under Mirza Aziz Koka (foster brother)** and returned to the capital. However, just within six months, rebellions broke out all over Gujarat. Hearing the news, Akbar quickly marched out of Agra and reached Ahmedabad in just ten days. He defeated the enemy and suppressed the rebellion (c. 1573 CE). After this, Akbar turned his attention to Bengal.
- **Bengal and Bihar were dominated by the Afghans**. They had also captured Orissa and killed its ruler. Internal fights among the Afghans and the declaration of independence by the new ruler, **Daud Khan**, gave Akbar the excuse he was seeking. Akbar first captured Patna and then returned to Agra, leaving **Khan-i-Khanan Munaim Khan** in charge of the campaign.
- The Mughal forces invaded Bengal and Daud Khan was forced to sue for peace. However, he soon revolted and in a stiff battle in Bihar in c. 1576, Daud Khan was defeated and executed on the spot. This ended the last Afghan kingdom in Northern India. It also brought an end to the first phase of Akbar's expansion of the empire.

REBELLIONS AND FURTHER EXPANSION OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

- Around c. 1580 – 1581 CE, Akbar had to deal with a series of rebellions, particularly in Bengal, Bihar, Gujarat and the northwest.
- The **main cause of the rebellion was the strict enforcement of the dagh system** or branding of the horses of the jagirdars and strict accounting of their income.
- The discontent was further **aggravated by some religious divines who were unhappy at Akbar's liberal views**. The rebellions kept the Mughal empire distracted for almost two years (c. 1580 – 1581 CE).
- Due to the mishandling of the situation by local officials, Bengal and almost the whole of Bihar passed into the hands of the rebels who **proclaimed Mirza Hakim** (who was in Kabul) as their ruler. Akbar sent a large force under **Raja Todar Mal and Shaikh Farid Bakshi**, and brought the situation in the east under control.
- **Raja Man Singh and Bhagwan Das** offered a stout defense to Mirza Hakim's attack on Lahore. Akbar crowned his success by marching to Kabul (c. 1581 CE). **Akbar handed over Kabul to his sister, Bakhtunissa Begum** and later on, **Raja Man Singh was appointed governor of Kabul** and it was handed over to him as jagir.
- **Abdullah Khan Uzbek**, the hereditary enemy of the Mughals, had been gradually gaining strength in Central Asia. In c. 1584 CE, he overran Badakhshan which had been ruled by the Timurids and next, he was aiming at Kabul. Mirza Hakim and the Timurid princes who were ousted from Badakhshan now appealed to Akbar for help. **Akbar sent Man Singh to Kabul and himself moved to Attok on the river Indus**. Akbar wanted to block all roads to the Uzbeks, so he sent expeditions against Kashmir (c. 1586 CE) and against Balochistan. The **whole of Kashmir including Ladakh and Baltistan** (called Tibet Khurd and Tibet Buzurg) came under the control of Mughals.
- Expeditions were also sent to clear the **Khyber pass which had been blocked by the rebellious tribesmen of Roshanai**. The sect was established by a soldier called Pir Roshanai and his son Jalala was the head of the sect. In this expedition, Akbar's favourite, **Raja Birbal lost his life**. But the tribesmen were gradually forced to submit.
- In c. **1590 CE, the conquest of Sindh** opened the trade down the river Indus for Punjab. By c. **1595 CE**, Mughal supremacy was established over the northwest region. Akbar **stayed at Lahore till c. 1598 CE** when the death of Abdullah Uzbek finally removed the threat from the side of the Uzbeks. The consolidation of the northwest and fixing a frontier of the empire were two major contributions of Akbar.
- After the consolidation of the northwest region, Akbar turned his attention towards the affairs of eastern and western India, and the Deccan.
- In c. **1592 CE, Raja Man Singh, the Mughal governor of Bengal conquered Orissa** which at that time was under the control of Afghan chiefs.
- He also **conquered Cooch-Bihar and parts of East Bengal, including Dacca**.
- **Mirza Aziz Koka, the foster brother of Akbar, brought Kathiawar** in the west under the domain of the Mughal empire.
- In c. 1591 CE, Akbar adopted a policy of aggression towards the **Deccan** and sent an expedition to the Deccan under the command of **Prince Murad (who was the governor of Gujarat) and Abdul Rahim Khan Khanan**.
- In c. 1595 CE, **Mughal forces invaded Ahmednagar and Chand Bibi was defeated**.

- After huge losses, an agreement was signed and **Chand Bibi ceded Berar** to the Mughals. After some time, Chand Bibi tried to regain control over Berar with the help of Adil Shahi and Qutab Shahi.
- The Mughals suffered huge losses but could retain their position.
- Meanwhile, differences grew between Prince Murad and Abdul Rahim Khan Kahan that weakened the Mughal position.
- Akbar **recalled Khan Kahan and deputed Abu Fazl to the Deccan**.
- After Prince Murad's death in c. **1598 CE**, **Prince Daniyal (youngest son of Akbar) and Khan Kahan were sent to the Deccan and Ahmednagar was again captured**.
- Soon, Mughals also captured Asirgarh and adjoining regions bringing them into direct conflict with the Marathas.
- Akbar died in c. 1605 CE and was buried at Sikandra (near Agra).

ART AND ARCHITECTURE

- During the reign of Akbar, **many indigenous art styles were encouraged** which led to the **common use of sandstone**.
- Akbar built a series of forts, the most famous of which is the fort at **Agra (in red sandstone)**. His other forts are at **Lahore and Allahabad**.
- Akbar built **Fatehpur Sikri** (city of victory) near Agra. Many buildings of **Gujarati and Bengali styles are found** in this complex. The most magnificent building in it is the **Jama Masjid** and the gateway to it is called **Buland Darwaza** (176 ft high), built in c. 1572 CE to commemorate Akbar's victory over Gujarat. Other important buildings at Fatehpur Sikri are **Jodha Bai's palace** and **Panch Mahal** with five storeys.
- He **built his own tomb at Sikandra (near Agra) which was completed by Jahangir**.
- Akbar **built a temple of Govindadeva at Vrindavan**.
- He also built **Jahangir Mahal** in Agra Fort.
- Akbar commissioned the illustrations of several literary and religious texts. He invited a large number of painters from different parts of the country to his court. Both Hindus and Muslims joined in this work.
- **Baswan, Miskina and Daswant** attained great positions as Akbar's court artists.
- Illustrations of **Persian versions of Mahabharata and Ramayana were produced in miniature form**.
- Many other Indian fables became miniature paintings in the art studio established by Akbar.
- Historical works like **Akbarnama** also remained the main themes of Mughal paintings.
- **Hamzanama** is considered to be the most important work which consisted of 1200 paintings. Indian colours such as peacock blue, Indian red began to be used.
- Akbar **patronised Tansen of Gwalior** who composed many ragas..
- The Persian language became widespread in the Mughal empire by the time of Akbar's reign. **Abul Fazl** was a great scholar and historian of his period. He set a style of prose writing and it was followed for many generations.

- Many historical works were written during this period. They include **Ain-i-Akbari** and **Akbarnama by Abul Fazl**.
- The **translation of Mahabharata into the Persian language was done under the supervision of Abul Faizi (brother of Abul Fazl)**.
- Utbi and Naziri** were the other two leading Persian poets. From the time of Akbar, Hindi poets were attached to the Mughal court.
- The most famous Hindi poet was Tulsidas, who wrote the **Hindi version of the Ramayana – the Ramacharitmanas**.

→ ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEM OF AKBAR

Organisation of Government

- Akbar paid great attention to the organisation of the central and provincial governments. His system of central government was based on the structure of government that had evolved under the **Delhi Sultanate** but the functions of various departments were carefully reorganised and meticulous rules and regulations were laid down for the conduct of affairs.
- The **territories of the empire were classified into Jagir, Inam and Khalisa**.
 - The **Inam lands** were those which were allotted to the religious and learned men.
 - Jagirs** were allotted to nobles and members of the royal family **including the queens**.
 - Income from the **Khalisa** villages went directly to the royal exchequer.

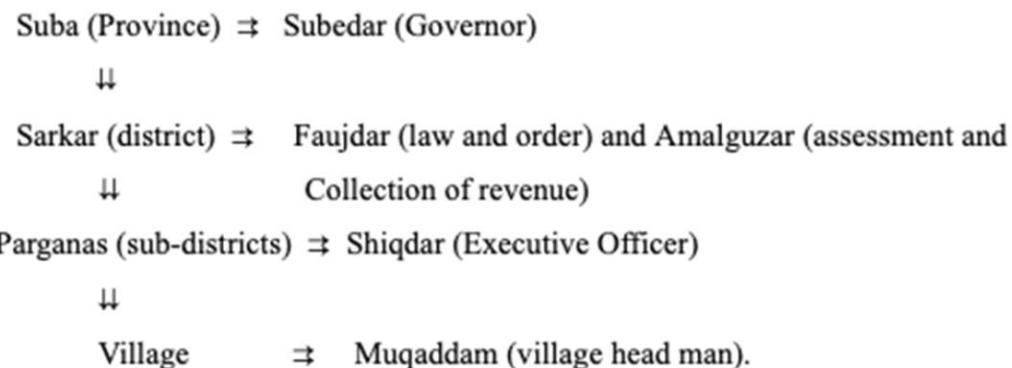
Central Administration

The Emperor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Emperor was the supreme head of the administration and controlled all military and judicial powers. He had the authority to appoint, promote and remove officials at his pleasure.
Wazir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was the principal link between the ruler and the administration. Bairam Khan, in his capacity as wakil, exercised the power of an all-powerful wazir. The head of the revenue department continued to be wazir but he was no longer the principal adviser to the ruler. The wazir was an expert in revenue affairs and was titled diwan or diwan-i-aala. The diwan was responsible for all incomes and expenditures and held control over Khalisa, Inam and Jagir lands.
Mir Bakshi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mir Bakshi was the head of the military department and also the head of the nobility. Recommendations for appointment to mansabs or for promotions, etc. were made to the emperor through him. After acceptance of the recommendations by the emperor, it was sent to the diwan for confirmation and for granting a jagir to the appointee.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He was also the head of the intelligence and information agencies of the empire. ○ Intelligence officers (Barids) and news reporters (waqia-navis) were posted to all parts of the empire. ○ It was Mir Bakshi who presented the intelligence reports to the emperor.
Mir Saman	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ An important officer who was in charge of the royal household and royal workshops called karkhanas. ○ He was responsible for all kinds of purchases, manufacturing of different kinds of items for use and their storage for the royal household. Only trustworthy nobles were appointed to this post. ○ The maintenance of etiquettes at the court, the control of royal bodyguards, etc. were all under the supervision of Mir Saman.
Chief Qazi/ Sadrus Sudur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Chief Qazi was the head of the judicial department. ○ This post was sometimes combined with that of the Chief Sadar (Sadrus Sudur) who was responsible for all charitable and religious endowments. Interestingly, the chief Qazi during Akbar's reign, Abdun Nabi, was accused of corruption. Later, several restrictions were imposed on the authority of the Sadar for the award of revenue-free grants. ○ Two important features of the inam grants were- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Akbar made it a deliberate part of his policy to grant inam lands to all persons irrespective of religious faith and beliefs. ▪ Sanads of grant to various Hindu maths made by Akbar are still preserved. ▪ Akbar made it a rule that half of the inam land should consist of cultivable wasteland. Thus, inam holders were encouraged to extend cultivation.
Mutasibs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ These were appointed to ensure the general observance of the rules of morality. ○ They also examined weights and measures and enforced fair prices, etc.

Provincial Administration

- In c. 1580 CE, Akbar divided the empire into **12 subas or provinces**.
- These were Bengal, Bihar, Allahabad, Awadh, Agra, Delhi, Lahore, Multan, Kabul, Ajmer, Malwa and Gujarat.
- Later on, **Berar, Ahmednagar and Khandesh** were added. With the expansion of the Mughal empire, the number of provinces rose to twenty.
- The empire was divided into-



Suba	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Each suba was under the control of a Subedar (provincial governor) who was directly appointed by the emperor. He maintained general law and order. ○ The head of the revenue department in the suba was Diwan. He supervised the revenue collection in the suba and maintained accounts of all expenditures. ○ Also, taccavi (advance loans) were given to peasants through his office. ○ The Bakshi was appointed at the recommendations of the Mir Bakshi and he performed the same functions as were performed by Mir Bakshi at the centre. He issued the pay bills of both the mansabdar and the soldiers. ○ Sadar was the representative of the central Sadar at the provincial level. He was in charge of the judicial department and supervised the working of the qazis. He also looked after the welfare of those who were engaged in religious activities and learning. ○ Darogai-i-Dak, appointed at the provincial level, was responsible for maintaining the communication channel. ○ He used to send letters to the court through the Merwars (postal runners).
Sarkar	<p>The chief officers of the Sarkar were:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Faujdar – He was primarily responsible for maintaining law and order. ○ Amalguzar – The Amalguzar or Amil was responsible for the assessment and collection of the land revenue.
Pargana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The shiqdar was the executive officer at the level of the pargana. ○ He assisted the Amil in the collection of revenue. ○ The Quanungo was in charge of land records in the Pargana. ○ The Kotwals in the towns were responsible for maintaining law and order.
Village	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The village headman was called the Muqaddam and the patwari looked after the land revenue records.

- The zamindars maintained law and order in their areas and also helped in revenue collection.

Land Revenue Administration

- The land revenue system of Akbar was called **Zabti or Bandobast** system.
- It was based on **Sher Shah's land revenue system** with certain modifications.
- It was further improved by **Raja Todar Mal** and was named as Dahsala system which was completed in c. 1580 CE.
- By this system, Todar Mal introduced a **uniform system of land measurement**. The revenue was fixed on the **average yield of land assessed on the basis of the past ten (dah) years**.
- **One-third of the average produce** was the state share and payments were generally made in cash.
- The land was classified into four-
 - **Polaj** (cultivated every year)
 - **Parauti** (cultivated once in two years)
 - **Chachar** (cultivated once in three or four years) and
 - **Banjar** (once in five or more years).
 - Both chachar and banjar were assessed at concessional rates.
- The **bigha (60 x 60 yards)** was used as the standard unit of area for measuring land. A new **gaz or yard, gaz-i-lahi**.
- The state demand **in kind was given in maunds**, but for the conversion of the state demand **from kind to cash**, a separate schedule of **cash revenue rates for various crops, known as Dastur-i-amal**, was established.
- Besides Zabti, other systems of assessment was **Batai or Ghalla Bakshi**.
- Under Batai, the produce was divided between the peasants and the state in a **fixed proportion**.
- The type of system was **Nasaq** (*particularly in Bengal*). It was based on rough calculation, required no actual measurement.
- Officials called **karoris** were appointed who were responsible for the collection of dams and also checked the facts and figures issued by the **qanungos**.
- Akbar was keenly interested in the improvement and expansion of cultivation.
- The **Amil (revenue officers)** were directed to advance **money by way of taccavi (loans)** to the peasants for implements, seeds, animals, etc. in times of need and to recover them in easy installments.
- Akbar's settlement (with some changes) remained the basis of the land revenue system of the Mughal empire till the end of the 17th century.

Mansabdari System

- Akbar organised the nobility as well as his army by means of the **mansabdari system**.
- Under this system, every officer was assigned a rank – **mansab**.
- The highest rank was 5000 for the nobles and the lowest was 10.

- Princes of the royal families received even higher mansabs.
- Two **premier nobles of the empire, Mirza Aziz Koka and Raja Man Singh** were honoured with the rank of 7000 each.
- All appointments, promotions and dismissals were made by the emperor himself.
- At first, there was only one rank but later, the ranks were divided into two-
 - **Zat Rank** – The word ‘zat’ means personal. It fixed the personal status of a person, and also the salary due to him.
 - **Sawar Rank** – It indicated the number of cavalrymen (sawars) a person was required to maintain.
 - There were **three categories in every rank** (mansab). A person who was required to maintain as **many sawars as his zat** was placed in the first category of that rank; if he maintained **half or more**, then in the second category and if he maintained **less than half then in the third category**.
- Persons holding ranks **below 500 zat were called mansabdars**, those from **500 to below 2500 were called amirs** and those **holding ranks of 1500 and above were called amir-i-umda or amir-i-azam**. However, the word mansabdar is sometimes used for all categories.
- Persons were usually appointed at low mansab and gradually promoted depending upon their merits and the favour of the emperor.
- In addition to **meeting his personal expenses**, the mansabdar had to maintain a **stipulated quota of horses, elephants, beasts of burden (camels and mules) and carts out of his salary**. Later, these were maintained centrally but the mansabdar had to pay for them out of his salary. The Mughal mansabdars formed the **highest-paid service** in the world.
- The **chehra (descriptive roll of every soldier) and dagh system (branding of horses) was followed**. Every noble had to bring his contingent for periodic inspection before persons appointed by the emperor for the purpose.
- Ideally, a **10-20 rule was followed which meant that, for every 10 cavalrymen**, the mansabdar had to **Maintain 20 horses**. Interestingly, a sawar with only one horse was considered to be only half a sawar.
- Provision was made that the contingent of the nobles should be a mixed one – drawn from all the **groups, Mughal, Pathan, Rajput and Hindustani**. Thus, Akbar tried to weaken the forces of tribalism and parochialism.
- The mansabdari system as it developed under the Mughals was a distinctive and unique system that did not have any exact parallel outside India. However, the lack of a strong navy remained a key weakness of the Mughal empire.

The Jagirdari System

- Jagirdari system was assigning revenue of a particular territory to the nobles for their services to the state.
- It was a **modified version of Iqta** of the Delhi Sultanate and was an **integral part of the mansabdari system**.
- The office of the central Diwan would identify **parganas** the sum **total of whose jama was equal to the salary claim of the mansabdar**. If the recorded jama was greater than the salary claim, the mansabdar was asked to deposit the extra with the central treasury. However, if the jama was less than the salary claim the remaining was paid from the treasury.

- Classification of jagirs:

Tankha Jagirs	given in lieu of salaries and were transferable
Watan Jagirs	were hereditary and non-transferable . It was given to zamindars or rajas in their local dominion. When a zamindar was appointed as mansabdar, he was given tankha jagir in addition to his watan jagir if the salary of his rank was more than his income from watan jagir
Mashrut Jagirs	jagirs assigned on certain conditions
Altamgha Jagirs	assigned to Muslim nobles in their family towns or place of birth

- Zamindars had hereditary rights over the produce of the land** and had a direct share of 10-25 % in the peasants' produce.
- He assisted the state in the collection of the revenue and also rendered military services to the state at times of need.
- The **zamindar was not the owner of all the lands** comprising his zamindari.
- The peasants who actually cultivated the land could not be dispossessed as long as they paid the land revenue.
- Both the zamindars and peasants had their own hereditary rights over the land.**

Religious Policy under Akbar

- Akbar laid the foundation of an empire based on equal rights to all citizens, irrespective of their religious beliefs. After marrying Jodha Bai of Amber, **he abolished jizya and also the pilgrim tax**.
- The liberal principles of the empire were strengthened by **bringing able Hindus into the nobility**. For instance, Raja Todar Mal rose to the post of diwan and Birbal who was a constant companion of Akbar.
- Akbar was deeply interested in religion and philosophy. At first, Akbar was an orthodox Muslim. He held in high esteem the leading qazi of the state, **Abdun Nabi Khan**, who was **Sadr-us-Sadur**. Gradually he moved away from the path of narrow orthodoxy.
- In c. 1575 CE, Akbar **built a hall called Ibadat Khana or the Hall of Prayer** at his new capital, **Fatehpur Sikri** wherein he invited learned scholars from all religions like Hinduism, Jainism, Christianity and Zoroastrianism and used to conduct religious discussions with them. Even atheists were encouraged to participate. Some of the scholars were –

- Dastur Maharji Rana** – Parsi (of Navsari)
- Hira Vijaya Suri** – Jain saint of Kathiawar
- Purushottam Das** – Hindu
- Aquaviva and Monserrate** – Christian (sent by the Portuguese on Akbar's request)

- In c. 1582 CE, Akbar discontinued the debates in the Ibadat Khana** as it led to bitterness, the representative of each religion denounced the other and tried to prove that his religion is the best.
- In c. 1579 CE, Akbar also **issued a declaration or mahzar which was called "Decree of Infallibility"** by which he asserted his religious powers.

- He was **entitled to choose any of the interpretations of the holy book, Quran**, if there were a difference of opinion among the ulamas.
- In c. **1582 CE**, he set up a new religion called **Din-i-Ilahi/Tawhid-i-Ilahi** (Divine Monotheism) which believes in one God and Sulh-i-Kul i.e, equal toleration and respect to all religious sects. It contained the good points of various religions.
- The **Tawhid-i-Ilahi was an order of the Sufistic type**. It, however, virtually died with the death of Akbar.
- Akbar also initiated a number of **social and educational reforms**. He **stopped sati**, unless she herself out of own free will desired. Widows **of tender age** who had not shared the bed with their husbands were not to be burnt at all.
- **Widow remarriage was also legalised**. Akbar was against anyone having more than one wife unless the first wife was barren.
- Age of marriage was also raised; **14 for girls and 16 for boys**.
- Akbar also revised the educational syllabus by laying more emphasis on **moral education and mathematics** and on secular subjects like agriculture, geometry, astronomy, rules of government, logic, history etc.

Akbar's Navratnas

- Nine of the courtiers were known as Akbar's navratnas (nine jewels).

Abul Fazl	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He authored Akbarnama and Ain-i-Akbari. ○ He led the Mughal army in its war in Deccan. ○ On the orders of Prince Salim, he was killed by Bir Singh Bundela.
Faizi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He was a great Persian poet. ○ Brother of Abul Fazl. ○ Under his supervision, the Mahabharata was translated into the Persian language. ○ He also translated Lilavati (a work on mathematics) into Persian.
Tansen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He served as a great musician in the court of king Ramachandra who titled him “Tansen”. He was born as Tanna Mishra. ○ Akbar gave him the title of “Mian”. ○ Known for singing the ragas Deepak and Megh Malhar respectively.
Raja Birbal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ His original name was Mahesh Das. ○ Akbar gave him the title of “Raja” and “Birbal”. ○ He died on the northwest frontier fighting the Yusuf Shahis.
Raja Todar Mal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He was the head of the revenue system. He introduced standard weights and measures. ○ He had earlier worked under Sher Shah Suri. ○ Akbar honoured him with the title of “Diwan-i-Ashraf”.
Raja Man Singh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ One of the trusted generals of Akbar.

Fakir Aziao Din	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ He was one of the chief advisors of Akbar. ○ He was a Sufi mystic.
Abdul Rahim Khan-i-Khanan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Son of Bairam Khan. ○ He was a great poet. He translated Baburnama into Persian.
Mirza Aziz Koka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Also known as Khan-i-Azam or Kotaltash. ○ Foster brother of Akbar. ○ He was also appointed Subedar of Gujarat.

JAHANGIR (1605-1627 AD)

- Salim was the eldest son, who succeeded to the throne in c.1605 CE, after the death of Akbar. He assumed the title of **Nur-ud-din Muhammad Jahangir** (conqueror of the world).
- He married **Mehr-un-nisa** in c.1611 CE (**widow of Sher Afghan**) who was also known as **Nur Jahan** (**light of the world**).
Sher Afgan Khan was a Turkoman who initially served the Safavids, and later became a Mughal courtier, becoming the jagirdar of Burdwan in West Bengal (1605–1607). He was also the first husband of Nur Jahan (Mehrunissa).
- Her father **Itimad Ud daulah** was a respectable man and was made **chief Diwan** by Jahangir. Her other family members also benefited from this alliance.
- Her elder brother, **Asaf Khan** was appointed as **Khan-i-Saman**, a post reserved for the nobles. In c. 1612 CE, **Asaf Khan's elder daughter, Arjmand Banu Begum** (later known as Mumtaz) married Jahangir's third son, Prince Khurram (later known as Shah Jahan).
- Nur Jahan immensely influenced the life of Jahangir. She was the only woman in the Mughal court and **coins were struck in her name**. Also, all royal farmans had her name. She even accompanied Jahangir in hunting.
- Jahangir had to face rebellions from his sons – **Khusrau and Khurram**.

Khusrau's rebellion

- Jahangir's eldest son (with Man Bai, daughter of Bhagwan Das), broke out into rebellion. However, Khusrau's rebellion proved to be short-lived.
- Jahangir defeated him at a **battle near Lahore** and soon afterwards he was captured and imprisoned.
- **Arjun Dev, the fifth Sikh Guru** was beheaded for supporting Khusrau.

Shah Jahan's rebellion

- Some modern historians are of the opinion that **Nur Jahan, along with her father, brother and in alliance with Khurram, formed a group or 'junta'** which managed Jahangir so that without its support no one could advance in his career.
- It is further said that Nur Jahan's political ambitions led to the differences between her and Shah Jahan. These differences drove Shah Jahan into rebellion against his father in (c. 1622 CE), since he felt that Jahangir was completely under the influence of Nur Jahan.

- However, some historians believe that Shah Jahan revolted against his father due to his personal ambitions.
- The **immediate cause of the rebellion was Shah Jahan's refusal to proceed to Qandahar** which had been besieged by the **Persians**. He was afraid that the campaign would be a long and difficult one and that intrigues would be hatched against him during his absence from the court. Hence, he put forth a number of demands like full command of the army which included the veterans of the Deccan, complete sway over Punjab, control over a number of important forts, etc.
- In the battle near Delhi, **Shah Jahan was defeated by the forces led by Mahabat Khan**. This rebellion distracted the Mughals for 4 years till c. 1626 CE when both father and son reconciled.
- This rebellion led to the loss of Qandahar and emboldened the Deccan to recover all the territories surrendered to the Mughals during Akbar's reign.

Mughal expansion under Jahangir

- The main achievement of Jahangir was the **settlement of the outstanding dispute with Mewar**.
- In c. 1615 CE, **Amar Singh of Mewar (son of Maharana Pratap)** submitted before **Jahangir**. Rana's son, **Karan Singh was made mansabdar with the rank of 5000**, which had earlier been accorded to the rulers of Jodhpur, Bikaner and Amber. Thus, Jahangir completed the task begun by Akbar, and further strengthened the alliance with the Rajputs.
- With the **help of Maratha sardars**, **Khan-i-Khanan inflicted a crushing defeat on the combined forces of Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golconda in c. 1616 CE**. This defeat shook the Deccani alliance against the Mughals.
- Jahangir was the **first Muslim ruler to annex Kangra** (in c. 1620 CE).
- In c. 1622 CE, **Mughals lost Qandahar** and was **captured by Shah Abbas of Persia**.
- Jahangir tried to follow an expansionist policy in the Deccan, however, he achieved little success. This was mainly due to **Malik Ambar**, who led the Deccani struggle against the Mughals.
- **Malik Ambar with the help of the Marathas and Ibrahim Adil Shah, ruler of Bijapur**, made it difficult for the Mughals to consolidate their position in Berar, Ahmednagar and Balaghat.
- During Jahangir's reign, conflict arose in the east. In c. 1608 CE, **Jahangir sent Islam Khan, the grandson of Sheikh Salim Chisti** (famous Sufi saint) to Bengal. Islam Khan handled the revolt with great energy and foresight. He defeated the Afghan rebels and thus Mughal power was firmly established in East Bengal.
- After the **death of Jahangir in c. 1627 CE**, **Shah Jahan reached Agra and with the support of the nobles, chief Diwan Asaf Khan**, and the army, Shah Jahan ascended the throne.
- Nur Jahan was given a pension and lived a retired life till her death 18 years later, and was buried at Lahore.
- During Jahangir's reign, the **British visited Machilipatnam. Captain Hawkins (c. 1608-1611CE) and Thomas Roe (c. 1615- 1619 CE)** visited his court.
- **Thomas Roe got the farman for setting up an English factory at Surat.**

Contribution to art and culture

- He **mostly stayed in Lahore** and banned the killing of animals for food on **Tuesdays and Fridays**.
- He wrote his autobiography, **Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri in Persian**. He also patronised **Farhang-i-Jahangiri**, a valuable dictionary.
- During his reign, **Khafi Khan wrote Muntakhab-i-Lubab** and **Hamid Lahori wrote Padshah Namah**.
- Constructing buildings with marble and decorating the walls with floral designs **made of semi-precious stones (Pietra Dura)** started during his reign.
- He visited Kashmir and laid a number of gardens there like **Shalimar Bagh, Nishat Bagh**.
- He built the **Moti Masjid at Lahore** and also **his own mausoleum at Lahore**.
- Mughal painting reached its peak under **Jahangir**.
- The use of “halo” or “Divine lights” behind the king’s head started under him.

SHAH JAHAN (1628-1658 AD)

- Shah Jahan ascended the throne in c.1628 CE at Agra. His mother was a **Hindu Jagat Gosain**. He was married to **Arjmand Banu Begum (Mumtaz Mahal)**.

Deccan Policy

- As a ruler, Shah Jahan’s first concern was to recover the territories in the Deccan which had been lost to the Nizam Shahi ruler. He deputed **Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi** for this purpose but he failed and he was recalled to the court.
- Soon, **Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi joined the Nizam Shahi ruler**. This infuriated Shah Jahan and he decided to follow an aggressive policy to recover lost territories of the Deccan.
- His **Deccan policy was more successful than Akbar and Jahangir**. After ascertaining the facts, he came to the conclusion that there could be no peace for the Mughals in the Deccan as long as Ahmednagar continued as an independent state. He **successfully isolated Ahmednagar** by winning over **Bijapur and the Marathas**.
- **Fath Khan, the son of Malik Ambar**, also joined the Mughals and Shah Jahan appointed **Mahbat Khan as Mughal viceroy of Deccan**. But the conflict with the Deccan states continued and finally, in c 1636 CE, ahdnama (treaties) were signed with Bijapur and Golconda.
- According to the **agreement with Bijapur, Adil Shah agreed to recognise the Mughal suzerainty**, to pay an indemnity of twenty lakh rupees and to not interfere in the affairs of Golconda which was brought under Mughal protection.
- Any **dispute between Bijapur and Golconda** was to be referred to the Mughal emperor for arbitration. Adil Shah also agreed to cooperate with the Mughals in reducing Shahji to submission.
- In return for these, territory worth about twenty lakh huns (about 80 lakh rupees) annually belonging to Ahmednagar was ceded to Bijapur. Shah Jahan also sent to Adil Shah a solemn farman impressed with the mark of the emperor’s palm that the terms of this treaty would never be violated.
- Shah Jahan completed the **settlement of the Deccan by entering into a treaty with Golconda** as well. The **ruler agreed to include the name of Shah Jahan in the khutba** and to exclude the name of the Iranian emperor from it.

- **Qutb Shah took an oath of loyalty towards the Mughal emperor.** The annual tribute of four lakh huns which Golconda was previously paying to Bijapur was remitted, instead, Golconda was required to pay two lakh huns annually to the Mughal emperor.
- The **treaties of c. 1636 CE with Bijapur and Golconda enabled Shah Jahan** to realise the ultimate objectives of Akbar. The suzerainty of the Mughal emperor was now accepted over the length and breadth of the country.
- Peace with the Mughals enabled the Deccani states to expand their territories towards the south.
- In the decade following the ahdnama of c. **1636 CE, Bijapur and Golconda** overran the rich and fertile land of Karnataka, from the river Krishna to Tanjore and beyond.
- In a short span of time, the territories of these two states were more than doubled and they reached the climax of their power and prosperity. However, rapid expansion weakened the internal cohesion these states had.
- Ambitious nobles such as **Shahji and his son Shivaji, in Bijapur and Mir Jumla**, the legendary noble of Golconda started carving out spheres of influence for themselves and this again led to the conflicting atmosphere in the Deccan. The Mughals demanded a price for their benevolent neutrality during the expansionist policy of these states.
- In c. **1656 CE** following the death of Muhammad Adil Shah, treaties were ignored. Shah Jahan asked his son, Aurangzeb, to conquer and annex the territories of the Deccan kingdom.
- In c. **1632 CE, Shah Jahan defeated the Portuguese near Hugli** due to regular abuse of trading privileges by them.
- Shah Jahan **captured Qandahar (in c. 1639 CE) and fortified it**, but Persia wrested Qandahar from the Mughals. Shah Jahan launched a prolonged campaign in the northwest frontier to recover Qandahar and other ancestral lands. However, realising the futility of his ambition, he stopped fighting and Qandahar became a permanent loss for the Mughals.

Art and Architecture

- Shah Jahan's reign is considered the “**The Golden Age**” of the Mughal empire.
- Shah Jahan built the **Taj Mahal**, one of the seven wonders of the world. Its construction was started in c. 1631 CE and was completed in 22 years. Its design was prepared by **Ustad Isa and Isa Muhammad Effendi** and the **main dome** was designed by **Ismail Khan**.
- During Shah Jahan's reign, mosque building reached its peak. He constructed the **Moti Masjid at Agra (built in white marble)**, the **Sheesh Mahal, Musalman Burj** at Agra (where he spent his last days in captivity) and **Jama Masjid at Delhi (in red stone)**.
- Fort building also reached its peak during the reign of Shah Jahan. The famous **Red Fort at Delhi with its Rang Mahal, Diwan-i-am and Diwan-i-khas** was built by him.
- He also built **Shalimar Bagh in Lahore** and the **city of Shahjahanabad**. He also got **Bebadal Khan to build the Peacock Throne**, on which is inscribed the famous **Amir Khusrao couplet “if there is paradise on earth, it is here”**.

- Shah Jahan's reign is described by French travellers Bernier and Tavernier, Italian traveller Manucci, and Peter Mundy described famine during Shah Jahan's time.

- Shah Jahan also patronised many authors and historians like **Inayat Khan** who wrote **Shah Jahan Nama**, his son, **Dara Shikoh** translated the **Bhagavad Gita and the Upanishads** into the Persian language.
- The last years of Shah Jahan's reign were clouded by a bitter war of succession among his four sons – **Dara Shikoh** (eldest and crown prince), **Shuja** (governor of Bengal), **Aurangzeb** (governor of Deccan) and **Murad Baksh** (governor of Malwa and Gujarat). Towards the end of c. 1657 CE, Shah Jahan fell ill at Delhi for some time but later recovered. But the princes started fighting for the Mughal throne.
- In the **battle of Samugarh** (c. 1658 CE), **Aurangzeb** defeated **Dara Shikoh**, which practically decided the issue of succession.
- Aurangzeb crowned himself with the **title of “Alamgir” (conqueror of the world)** but the civil war continued for more than two years.
- In the **battle of Khajwa (Allahabad)** **Aurangzeb** defeated **Shuja** and emerged victorious. The **battle of Deorai** (c. 1659 CE) was the last **battle Dara Shikoh fought against Aurangzeb**. Dara Shikoh was again defeated by Aurangzeb and he had to flee to Afghanistan. However, he was captured, imprisoned and later, executed by Aurangzeb.
- After the battle of Deorai, the second coronation of Aurangzeb took place.
- Aurangzeb entered the Agra Fort and forced Shah Jahan to surrender. Shah Jahan was confined to the Agra Fort and strictly put under vigil. Shah Jahan was lovingly nursed by his daughter, **Jahan Ara**. He died in c. 1666 CE and was buried beside his wife's grave in the Taj Mahal.

AURANGZEB (1658-1707 AD)

- Aurangzeb was one of the ablest of the Mughal kings. He assumed the title **“Alamgir” (world conqueror)**.
- Aurangzeb ruled for almost 50 years and during his long reign, the Mughal empire reached its territorial climax. It stretched from **Kashmir in the north to Jingi in the south, and from Hindukush in the west to Chittagong in the east**.
- In c. 1662 CE, **Mir Jumla**, the governor of Bengal led the expedition against the **Ahoms**. He penetrated up to the limit of the Ahom kingdom, and forced the Ahom king to sign a favourable treaty (c. 1663 CE). Mir Jumla died soon after his brilliant victory.
- In c. 1667 CE, the Ahoms renewed the **contest and recovered the areas ceded to the Mughals**.
- **Shaista Khan**, who succeeded Mir Jumla as the governor of Bengal, captured the **island of Sondip and Chittagong**. He also chastised Arakanese pirates.

Conquest of Deccan

- When Aurangzeb became Mughal emperor, for the first 25 years he concentrated on the northern regions. At that time, Maratha ruler Shivaji carved out an independent kingdom in the territories of north and south Konkan.

- **To contain the spread of the Marathas**, Aurangzeb decided to invade Bijapur and Golconda.
- He **defeated Sikandar Shah of Bijapur and annexed his kingdom (c. 1686 CE)**. Then he proceeded against Golconda, eliminated the Qutb Shahi dynasty and annexed it (c. 1687 CE). Along with Bijapur and Golconda, he also seized the territory of Karnataka.
- Aurangzeb made Khirki, founded by Malik Ambar, the capital of Mughal Deccan and named it Aurangabad.
- In fact, the destruction of the Deccan kingdoms is considered to be a political blunder on the part of Aurangzeb. The barrier between the Mughals and the Marathas was removed and there ensued a direct confrontation between them. Also, his Deccan campaigns exhausted the Mughal treasury.
- According to J.N Sarkar, the Deccan ulcer ruined Aurangzeb.

Religious Policy and Rebellions

- It is believed that the various rebellions that took place during Aurangzeb's reign were the outcome of his harsh religious policy. This included the **rebellion of the Jat peasantry at Mathura**.
- In c. 1669 CE, the **revolt was under the leadership of a local zamindar, Gokla**. In a stiff battle, the Jats were defeated, Gokla captured and executed.
- In c. 1685 CE, there was a second uprising of the Jats under the leadership of **Rajaram** and later, under his successor, Churaman (in c. 1691 CE).
- In c. 1672 CE, there was a **conflict between the Satnamis and the Mughal state at Narnaul**. The satnamis were mostly peasants, artisans and considered of 'low caste'.
- At the beginning of his rule, he **forbade the kalima (texts to memorize to learn the fundamentals of Islam) being inscribed on coins** and **abolished the festival of Navroz** (as it was considered a Zoroastrian practice favoured by the Safavid rulers of Iran).
- The **celebration of Muharram was stopped**. In fact, his invasions against the Deccan Sultanates were partly due to his antagonism for the Shia faith.
- In c. 1675 CE, he **executed the ninth Sikh Guru, Guru Tegh Bahadur**, which resulted in the rebellion of the Sikh community against him.
- **Muhtasibs were appointed in all the provinces**. These officers were **entrusted with the job of enforcing moral codes and the Sharia**.
- He **forbade singing in the court**, however, **instrumental music and naubat (royal band) continued**.

- It is pertinent to mention that the **largest number of Persian works on classical music was written in Aurangzeb's rule and that Aurangzeb himself was proficient in playing the veena**.

- Aurangzeb **discontinued the practice of Jharokha darshan** (showing himself to the public from the balcony), since he considered it anti-Islamic.
- In c. 1679 CE, he **reimposed jizya and pilgrim tax**.
- Aurangzeb's Rajput policy also alienated the Rajputs and they gradually lost their position in the administrative set-up.
- Aurangzeb's policy towards Mewar and Marwar was clumsy and blundering and brought no advantage of any kind to the Mughals. He wanted to divide the state of

Marwar between the two branches of the family. The **Rathore sardars led by Durgadas rejected the proposal of the division** of state which they felt would be against the best interests of the state.

- The **ruler of Mewar (Rana Raj Singh)** strongly opposed the Mughal interference in the internal affairs of the Rajputs, such as the questions of succession. This led to the long drawn out war of the Mughals with Mewar and Marwar which weakened the Mughal alliance with the Rajputs. It created doubts about the firmness of Mughal support to old and trusted allies and the ulterior motives of Aurangzeb.
- Aurangzeb's conflicts in the northeast and with the Jats, Afghans, Sikhs and Rajputs put a strain on the empire. However, the real conflict lay in the Deccan.

Art and Architecture during his reign

- He constructed the **Moti Masjid at Delhi** and the **Badshahi Mosque at Lahore**.
- **Ishwar Das Nagar** authored **Fatahat-i-alamgiri**.
- **Nimat Khan Ali** authored **Wakai-i-Hyderabad**, the conquest of Golconda by Aurangzeb.
- **Mirza Mohammad Qasim** authored **Alamgirnama**.

→ ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL LIFE UNDER THE MUGHALS

- During the Mughal rule, many European travellers and traders came to India and their accounts contain valuable information regarding the social and economic conditions of India.
- In general, they described the wealth and prosperity of India and also the luxurious life of the aristocratic class.
- On the other side, they also mentioned the poverty and sufferings of the ordinary masses like artisans and peasants.

GROWTH OF TRADE

- The Indian trading classes were large in number and spread throughout the country.
- They were well organized and highly professional. Local traders were called **baniks while Seth, Bohra traders specialized in long-distance trade**.
- **Banjaras** were another class of traders who carried goods in bulk. The banjaras used to move long distances with their goods on the back of oxen.
- The **trading communities belonged to all faiths/religions**. For instance, the Gujarati traders included Hindus, Muslims and Jains.
- In Rajasthan, **Oswals, Agarwals and Maheshwaris were called the Marwaris**.
- **Afghanis, Khatris and Multanis traded with Central Asia**.
- The **Chettis of the Coromandel coast** and the **Muslim merchants of Malabar** were the most important trading communities in South India.
- **Bengal exported sugar, rice as well as delicate muslin and silk**.
- The **Coromandel coast** became a centre of textile production.

- Gujarat was an entry point for foreign items. From there, fine textiles and silk were taken to north India.
- Items like food grains and indigo were exported from north India through Gujarat. It also became the distribution centre for the luxury products of Kashmir such as shawls and carpets.
- Certain metals like **copper and tin, war horses and luxury items** like ivory were the major goods of import.
- **Burhanpur and Agra** served as the two main trading hubs for the **export of silk (patola) and high-end textiles to north India.**
- Another hub for the **manufacture of crafts was Lahore**. Additionally, it served as a hub for the distribution of **Kashmir's high-end goods**, including as shawls and carpets.
- The **Indus River** was used to transport the goods from Sindh and Punjab.
- The growth of foreign trade led to the increased import of gold and silver in the 17th century.
- The foreign traders have described Indian traders as alert and brisk.
- The foreign trade witnessed further increase due to the setting up of the European trading companies and their direct participation in the Euro-Asian and intra-Asian trade.
- At the **point of entry** into the empire, products were subject to a unified tax.
- **Road cesses, or Rahdari**, continued to be collected by some of the local rajas despite being deemed illegal.

- The common people food was **pulses, millets and rice.**
- In coastal region **fish** was common.
- Milk and milk products were surplus, salt and sugar were expensive, while ghee and oil were cheaper.
- A large variety of crops such as **barley, gram, pulses, rice, and wheat** were cultivated.
- Commercial crops such as **indigo, oil-seeds, cotton and sugarcane** were also cultivated.
- During the **seventeenth century two new crops, viz., tobacco and maize were added.**
- On a note, no new agricultural technique was introduced during this period.
- India was able to export food items like rice and sugar to the neighbouring countries.

PAINTINGS

- The foundation for the Mughal painting was laid by Humayun while staying in Persia.
- He brought with him two painters – **Mir Sayyid Ali and Abdal Samad** to India.
- Akbar commissioned the illustrations of several literary and religious texts.
- He invited a large number of painters from different parts of the country to his court.
- Both Hindus and Muslims joined in this work.
- **Baswan, Miskina and Daswant** attained great positions as Akbar's court as artists.
- Illustrations of Persian versions of Mahabharata and Ramayana were produced in miniature form.

- Art Studio established by Akbar. Historical works such as Akbar Nama also remained the main themes of Mughal paintings
- Mughal paintings reached its climax during the reign of Jahangir.
- He employed a number of painters like **Abul Hasan, Bishan Das, Madhu, Anant, Manohar, Govardhan and Ustad Mansur**

LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

- Persian language became widespread in the Mughal Empire by the time of Akbar's reign.
- Many historical works were written during this period. They include **Ain-i-Akbari** and **Akbar Nama authored by Abul Fazl**. Also known for **Persian translation of the Bible**.
- The leading poet of that period was his brother **Abul Faizi**. The translation of Mahabharata into the Persian language was done under his supervision. His Divan (**collection of poems**), was entitled **Tabashir al-Subh**.

- **Baburnama (translation of tuzuk I baburi)** was written in Persian by **Abdul Rahim Khan**. He was popularly known as **simply Rahim and titled Khan-i-Khanan**, known for his Hindustani dohe.
- In Sanskrit, he wrote two **books on astrology**, Khetakautukam and Dwatrimshadyogavali

- **Abdul Qadir Badauni** translated **Mahabharata into Persian as Razanamah**.
- **Utbi and Naziri** were the other two major Persian poets. They migrated from Iran to India and established the Mughal court as one of the Islamic world's cultural centres.

- Jahangir's autobiography, **Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri** was famous for its style.
- **Mutamid khan** has written biography of Jahangir as **Iqbalnamah-i-Jahangir**.
- He also patronized many scholars like **Ghiyas Beg, Naqib Khan and Niamatullah**.
- Shah Jahan also patronized many writers and historians like **Abdul Hamid Lahori, author of Padshah Nama** and **Inayat Khan** who wrote Shah Jahan Nama.
- His son Dara Shikoh translated the Bhagavat Gita and Upanishads into the Persian language. His most famous work, **Majma-ul-Bahrain**.

- Regional languages such as **Bengali, Oriya, Rajasthani and Gujarati** had also developed during this period.
- Many devotional works including the Ramayana and Mahabharata were translated into regional languages.
- The most **influential Hindi poet was Tulsidas**, who wrote the Hindi version of the Ramayana, the **Ramcharitmanas**.
- **Jaganath Pandithraya**, court poet of Shahjahan has written two Sanskrit books **Ganga Lahari** and **Rasagangadhamaram**.

ADMINISTRATIVE DEPARTMENTS

Category	Department	Responsibilities
Diwan-i-Wazarat	Revenue and Finance	Regulating Revenue Settlement

		Fixing Taxes Controlling Empire expenses
Diwan-i-Arz	Military	Regulating and preserving the Royal Army
Diwan-i-Rasalatmuhtasib	Foreign Affairs	Maintaining trade and economic relations with foreign rulers/entities
Diwan-i-insha	Custodian of Government papers	In charge of the Royal correspondence for all matters, including confidential affairs
Diwan-i-qaza	Judicial	Managing justice in the empire
Diwan-i-Barid	Intelligence Department	Managing intelligence affairs
Diwan-i-Saman	In charge of Royal Household	Managing the royal household

Causes for the Downfall of the Mughals

- The Mughal Empire declined rapidly after the death of Aurangzeb. The Mughal court became the **scene of factions among the nobles**.
- The **weakness of the empire was exposed when Nadir Shah** imprisoned the Mughal Emperor and **looted Delhi in 1739**.
- The causes for the downfall of the Mughal Empire were varied. To some extent, the **religious and Deccan policies of Aurangzeb contributed** to its decline.
- The **weak successors and demoralization of the Mughal army** also paved the way for it.
- The **vastness of the empire became unwieldy**.
- The **financial difficulties** due to continuous wars led to the decline.
- The **neglect of the sea power** by the Mughals was felt when the Europeans began to settle in India.
- Further, the **invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali** weakened the Mughal state.
- Thus the decline and downfall of the Mughal Empire was due to the combination of political, social and economic factors.

→ LATER MUGHALS

- The period between c. **1707 CE and c. 1761 CE** (the time of Aurangzeb's death to the period when the Third Battle of Panipat took place, wherein Ahmad Shah Abdali defeated the Maratha chiefs), witnessed the resurgence of regional identities and highlighted a sad state of affairs for the once-mighty Mughals.
- The Mughal court became the scene of factions among the nobles.
- The **weakness of the empire was exposed when Nadir Shah imprisoned the Mughal Emperor** and looted Delhi in c. 1739 CE.

- After the death of Aurangzeb in c. 1707 CE, a war of succession broke out among his three sons – **Muazzam (the governor of Kabul), Muhammad Kam Baksh (the governor of Deccan) and Muhammad Azam Shah (the governor of Gujarat)**.

Bahadur Shah I/Shah Alam/Muazzam (c. 1707 – 1712 CE)

- **Muazzam ascended the throne** and assumed the title of **Bahadur Shah, at the age of 63.**
- He **followed a liberal policy** towards the nobles, granted them the territories of their preferences and promoted them.
- This led to the worsening of the state finances. It is also believed that the real power was in the hands of the **wazir, Zulfiqar Khan**.
- He showed **a tolerant attitude towards Hindus**, though he never abolished jizya.
- During his reign, the **independence of Marwar and Mewar was acknowledged**. However, the settlement could not restore these states to become fully committed warriors for the Mughal cause.
- His policy towards the Marathas was also half-hearted reconciliation. He **did not recognize Shahu (whom he released) as the rightful Maratha king**.
- He **granted Maratha the sardeshmukhi of the Deccan**, but failed to grant the Chauth and thus could not satisfy them fully. Marathas, thus, continued to fight among themselves as well as against the Mughals.
- **Jat chief Charuman and the Bundella chief Chatrasal joined him in his campaign against the Sikhs.**
- **High mansab was granted to the tenth Sikh Guru, Guru Gobind Singh**. He, however, had to face rebellion from **Banda Bahadur** and it was during the course of his campaign against Banda Bahadur that he died (in c. 1712 CE).
- He was given the title of “**Shah-i-Bekhabar**” by Mughal historians like **Khafi Khan**.

Jahandar Shah (c. 1712 – 1713 CE)

- After the death of Bahadur Shah, a new form of politics emerged in the Mughals' political sphere wherein the **nobles became 'king makers' and the kings mere 'puppets' in their hands**.
- **Jahandar Shah was the first puppet ruler** in Mughal India. He was **supported by Zulfiqar Khan (wazir)** who had the reins of the executive in his hands.
- Zulfiqar Khan **built friendly relations with the Marathas, the Rajputs and different Hindu chieftains**.
- He **abolished jizya and gave the title of "Maharaja" to Ajit Singh (Marwar) and Mirza Raj Sawai to Jai Singh of Amber**.
- He also **granted the Chauth and Sardeshmukhi of the Deccan to Shahu**. However, the old policy of suppression was continued against Banda Bahadur and the Sikhs.
- Zulfiqar also tried to improve the financial situation of the empire by checking reckless grants of jagirs and offices. He also made mansabdars maintain the official quota of troops.
- However, he is **infamous in history for introducing the evil practice of Ijarah (revenue farming)**.

- Jahandar Shah's favourite lady, **Lal Kanwar (a dancing girl) dominated the court.**

Ijarah system (revenue farming)

- It was introduced in **Bengal during the reign of Jahandar Shah** to increase the revenue of the state, which was supported by Zulfiqar Khan.
- When farmers could not cultivate the land due to the non-availability of resources or some calamity, the land was passed over to a **third party called the revenue farmer.**
- In return, the state offered the revenue farmers considerable freedom in the assessment and collection of taxes. This allowed new **social groups such as moneylenders and bankers** to influence the management of the state's revenue system.

Farrukh Siyar (c. 1713 – 1719 CE)

- Farrukh Siyar **defeated his brother Jahandar Shah** at Agra in c. 1713 CE.
- He ascended the throne with the **support of the Saiyyad brothers (the kingmakers)** – **Saiyyad Abdullah Khan (Wazir) and Hussain Ali Khan (Mir Bakshi).**
- The Saiyyad brothers **killed Zulfiqar Khan** and appointed themselves to key positions.
- The Saiyyad brothers tried to **make peace with the Marathas, the Jats, the Rajputs** and were also successful in suppressing the Sikh revolt. It was during this time that Banda Bahadur, the Sikh leader, was executed.
- In c. **1717 CE, Farrukh Siyar granted many trading privileges to the East India Company** and also exempted customs duties for its trading through Bengal.
- The Saiyyad brothers **completely did away with jizya and also abolished pilgrimage tax** at a number of places.
- Due to the overwhelming powers of the Saiyyad brothers, differences grew between Farukh Siyar and the Saiyyad brothers. The emperor plotted thrice against the brothers, but failed to overpower them.
- In c. **1719 CE, the Saiyyad brothers forged an alliance with Balaji Vishwanath (Maratha ruler) and with the help of Maratha troops, the Saiyyad brothers killed Farrukh Siyar.**

Rafi-us-Darajat (c. 1719 CE)

- The Saiyyad brothers placed Rafi-us-Darajat at the throne. In fact, within a short span of eight months three young princes were raised to the throne by the Saiyyad brothers.
- He died within four months due to excessive consumption.
- Grandson of Aurangzeb, **Nikusiyar** revolted during his reign and occupied the throne at Agra with the support of **Mitrasen (a Nagar Brahmin).**

Rafi-us-Daula (c. 1719 CE)

- Hussain Ali Khan (the Saiyyad brother) marched upon Agra and imprisoned Nikusiyar.
- **Rafi-us-Daula was titled as Shah Jahan II.**
- He ruled for a very short period and died of Tuberculosis.

Muhammad Shah (Rangeela)/Roshan Akhtar (c. 1719 – 1748 CE)

- Brother of Jahan Shah who was fond of dancing and was **himself an expert Kathak dancer.**
- In c. 1720, he **successfully dislodged the Saiyyad brothers** with the help of **Nizam-ul-Mulk, Chin Qilich Khan** and his father's cousin **Muhammad Amin Khan.**
- He **appointed Muhammad Amir Khan**, who killed Hussain Ali Khan, as **wazir under the title of Itmad-ud-Daula.**
- However, independent states emerged during his reign, the **Deccan under Nizam-ul-Mulk, Awadh under the leadership of Saadat Khan** and **Murshid Quli Khan reigned Bihar, Bengal and Orissa.**
- The weakness of the Mughal empire was exposed when Nadir Shah invaded India, imprisoned the Mughal emperor and looted Delhi in c. 1739 CE.

Invasion of Nadir Shah (c. 1739 CE)

- Nadir Shah was the Emperor of Iran. He was a national hero there who drove the Afghans out of Iran.
- When Nadir Shah came to power in c. 1736 CE, **Muhammad Shah Rangeela withdrew his ambassador from the Persian court** and snapped all diplomatic ties with that country. Nadir Shah sent three envoys to the Mughal court and his third envoy was detained by Rangeela which enraged him.
- When Nadir Shah invaded Afghanistan, some of the Afghan nobles took shelter under Rangeela.
- Also, **Saadat Khan and Nizam-ul-Mulk invited Nadir Shah** to invade India.

Course of invasion

- He captured Jalalabad, Peshawar (c. 1738 CE) and then Lahore in c. 1739.
- **Battle of Karnal (c. 1739 CE)**
- Upon hearing of the advancing Persian army, Muhammad Shah marched his forces out of Delhi in order to meet the invading army and prevent their entry into his capital.
- The two forces met at Karnal for battle (about 120 km north of Delhi). The Persian soldiers wreaked havoc on the Mughal army.
- Mughal Emperor Muhammad Shah surrendered and he had to take Nadir Shah to his capital. The entire treasury was looted and the soldiers indulged in massacre of the general population including women and children at Delhi.
- The sack of Delhi lasted for several days, after which Nadir Shah asked his men to cease. In May c. 1739 CE, Nadir Shah and his troops left the city.
- Muhammad Shah was retained as the emperor of the Mughal empire but was compelled to cede to him all the provinces of the empire falling **west of the river Indus.**
- Nadir Shah almost emptied the treasury and also **took away the famous Kohinoor and the Peacock throne.**
- Nadir Shah's invasion caused an irreparable loss of prestige and exposed the weaknesses of the empire to the Maratha Sardars and the foreign trading companies as well.

Ahmad Shah (c. 1748 – 1754 CE)

- Son of Muhammad Shah Rangeela and **Kudsiya Begum** (a dancing girl).
- Ahmad Shah Abdali (ruler of Afghanistan) invaded Delhi many times, and Punjab along with Multan was ceded to him.
- The Marathas snatched Malwa and Bundelkhand.
- His wazir, **Imad-ul-Mulk**, blinded him and imprisoned him at Salimgarh.

Alamgir II (c. 1754 – 1759 CE)

- He was the **second son of Jahandar Shah** and was **raised to the throne by Imad-ul-Mulk** after he deposed Ahmad Shah.
- Had to face repeated invasions of Ahmad Shah Abdali.
- The famous **Battle of Plassey (23 June c. 1757 CE)** was fought during his tenure. The Battle of Plassey helped the British East India Company to seize control of Bengal.
- He was also murdered by his wazir, **Imad-ul-Mulk**.

Ali Gauhar/Shah Alam II (c. 1759 – 1806 CE)

- During his reign, the Mughal power was so depleted that it led to a saying in Persian “**Sultanat-e-Shah Alam, Az Dili ta Palam**”, meaning “The kingdom of Shah Alam is from Delhi to Palam,” Palam being a suburb of Delhi.
- Due to his conflict with the wazir, he **fled to Awadh (c. 1761 – 1764 CE)**.
- He **returned to Delhi when Marathas re-established their hold and invited him to the capital**.

- The **third Battle of Panipat (c. 1761 CE)** was fought during his reign between the Marathas and Ahmad Shah Abdali.
- The **Battle of Buxar was fought in c. 1764 CE** between the forces under the command of the British East India Company, led by **Hector Munro** and the combined armies of **Mir Qasim (Nawab of Bengal)**, **Shuja-ud-Daula (Nawab of Awadh)** and the Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II.
- The war was brought to an end by the **Treaty of Allahabad (c. 1765 CE)** under which Diwani rights (right to collect land revenue) of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa were granted to the British East India Company.

- He was the **first Mughal ruler who became an East India Company pensioner**.

Akbar II (C. 1806 – 1837 CE)

- He was the son of **Shah Alam II** and remained only under British protection as in c. 1803 CE, the British had captured Delhi.
- He **conferred the title of “Raja” on Ram Mohan Roy**.
- He was a great poet and is credited with the introduction of the Hindu-Muslim unity festival **Phool Walon Ki Sair**.

Bahadur Shah II/Zafar (c. 1837 – 1857 CE)

- He was the last ruler of the Mughal Empire. He was an accomplished poet and his pen name was **Zafar (victory)**.
- He participated in the revolt of c. 1857 CE.

- After the revolt was suppressed, he was **deported to Rangoon (Burma) where he died in c. 1862 CE.**

→ THE MARATHAS

- Various factors contributed to the rise of Marathas in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. The **physical environment of the Maratha country** shaped certain peculiar qualities among the Marathas.
- The **mountainous region and dense forests** made them brave soldiers and adopt **guerilla tactics**. They built a number of forts on the mountains.
- The **spread of the Bhakti movement in Maharashtra** inculcated a spirit of religious unity among them.
- The **spiritual leaders** like **Tukkaram, Ramdas, Vaman Pandit and Eknath** fostered social unity.
- The **political unity was conferred by Shivaji**.
- The Marathas **held important positions in the administrative and military systems** of Deccan Sultanates of Bijapur and Ahmadnagar.
- There were a number of influential Maratha families such as the Mores and Nimbalkers. But the credit of establishing a powerful Maratha state goes to Shahji Bhonsle and his son Shivaji.

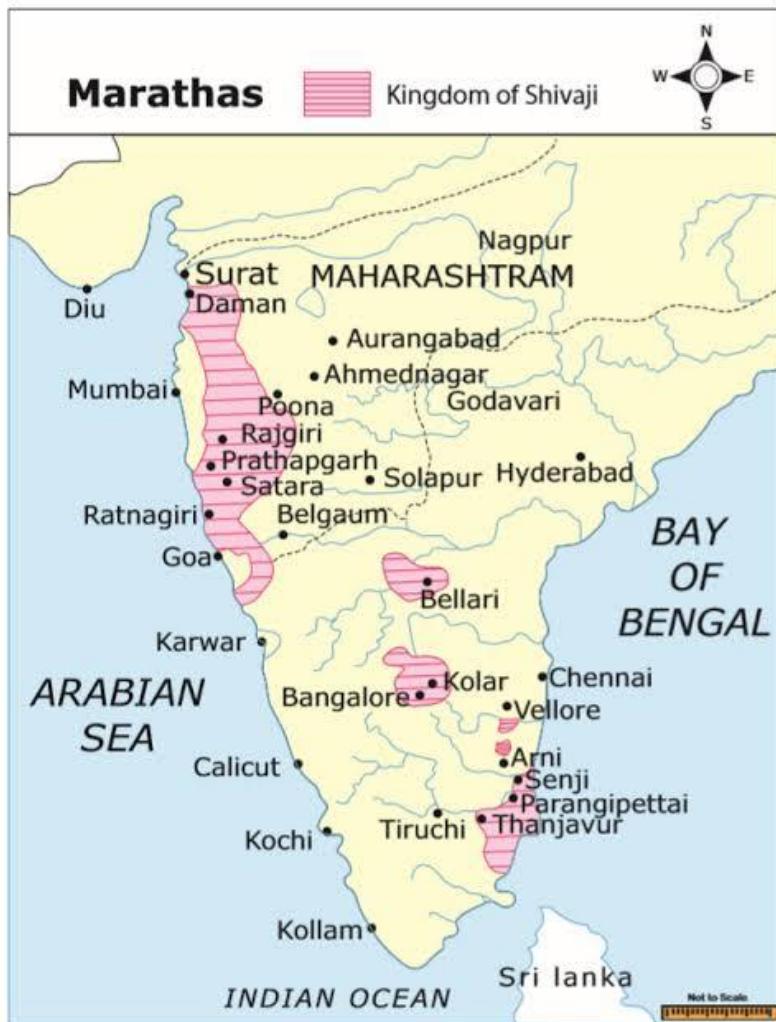
→ SHIVAJI (1627-1680)

- Shivaji was born at **Shivner in 1627**. His father was **Shahji Bhonsle and mother Jija Bai**.
- He **inherited the jagir of Poona** from his father in 1637.
- After the death of his guardian, **Dadaji Kondadev in 1647**, Shivaji assumed full charge of his jagir. Even before that he conquered **Raigarh, Kondana and Torna from the ruler of Bijapur**.
- He captured **Javli from a Maratha chief, Chanda Rao More**. This made him the master of Mavala region.
- In **1657, he attacked the Bijapur kingdom** and captured a number of hill forts in the Konkan region. The Sultan of Bijapur sent **Afzal Khan against** Shivaji. But Afzal Khan was murdered by Shivaji in 1659 in a daring manner.
- Shivaji's military conquests made him a legendary figure in the Maratha region. Many came forward to join his army.

Conflict with Mughals

- The Mughal emperor Aurangazeb was anxiously watching the rise of Maratha power under Shivaji. He sent the **Mughal governor of the Deccan, Shaista Khan** against Shivaji.
- Shivaji suffered a defeat at the hands of the Mughal forces and lost Poona. But Shivaji once again made a bold attack on Shaista Khan's military camp at Poona in 1663, killed his son and wounded Khan. This daring attack affected the prestige of Khan and he was recalled by Aurangazeb.

- In 1664, Shivaji attacked Surat, the chief port of the Mughals and plundered it.
 - This time Aurangazeb sent Raja Jai Singh of Amber to fight against Shivaji. He made elaborate preparations and succeeded in besieging the Purander fort where Shivaji lodged his family and treasure.
 - Shivaji opened negotiations with **Jai Singh and the Treaty of Purander was signed in 1665**. According to the treaty, **Shivaji had to surrender 23 forts to the Mughals** out of 35 forts held by him. The remaining 12 forts were to be left to Shivaji on condition of service and loyalty to Mughal empire. On the other hand, the **Mughals recognized the right of Shivaji to hold certain parts of the Bijapur kingdom**. As Shivaji asked to exempt him from personal service to the Mughals, his minor son
- Shambaji was granted a mansab of 5000.**



- Shivaji visited Agra in 1666 but he was imprisoned there. But, he managed to escape from prison and made military preparations for another four years. Then he renewed his wars against the Mughals.
- Surat was plundered by him for the second time in **1670**. He also captured all his lost territories by his conquests.

- In 1674 Shivaji crowned himself at Raigarh** and assumed the title **Chatrapathi**.
- Then he led an expedition into the **Carnatic region and captured Ginjee and Vellore**. After his return from this expedition, Shivaji died in 1680.

Shivaji's Administration

- Shivaji laid the foundations of a sound system of administration.
- His system of administration was very much influenced by the Mughal and Deccani states of administration.

- The Maratha Empire was called **Swarajya or Mulk-e-Kadim.**

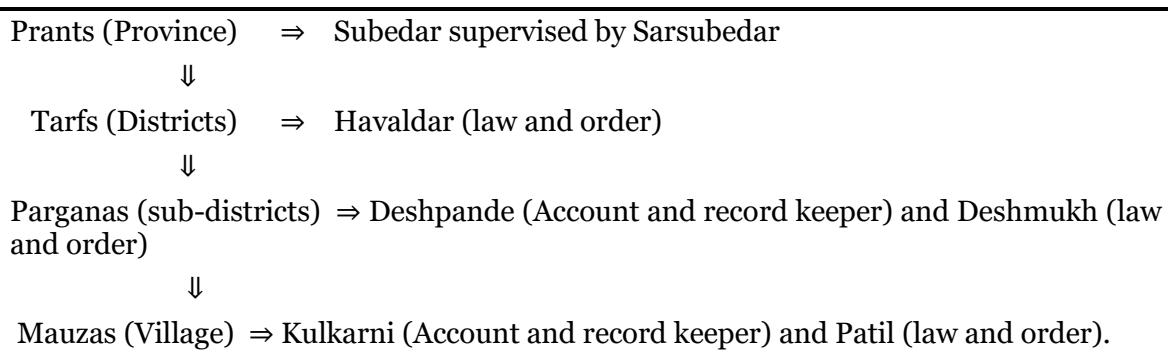
Central Administration

- The king was assisted by a council of ministers called **Ashtapradhan.**
- Each minister headed a department and was directly answerable to Shivaji.
- These **offices were neither permanent nor hereditary.**

Peshwa – Pant Pradhan	in charge of finance and general administration. Later Peshwa became more powerful and became the Prime Minister.
Sar-i-Naubat or Senapati	Military commander, an honorary post.
Amatya/Majumdar	Accountant General
Waqia Navis	Intelligence and police, posts, and household affairs.
Surnavis or Chitnis or Sachiv	who looked after official correspondence
Sumanta	Master of ceremonies and foreign affairs.
Nyayadhish	Justice.
Pandita Rao	Charities and religious administration

Provincial Administration

- The provinces were known as **Prants and it was under the charge of a Subedar.**
- The **Sarsubedar** used to control and supervise the work of the Subedar.
- The **Tarfs were controlled by a havaldar.**
- Villages or Mauzas** were the lowest unit of administration.
- In rural regions, a **police officer was called Faujdar** and in **urban regions, he was called Kotwal.**
- Under the Marathas, performance based **Brahmin elites were called Kamvishdar** who controlled the central bureaucracy and the local administration and also enjoyed powers of tax assessment and collection.
- They provided information about local conditions to the superior officials.



Army

- The **regular army (paga)** consisted of about 30,000 to 40,000 cavalry supervised by havaldars who received fixed salaries.
- The **lowest head of the cavalry was called Naik.**

- There were two divisions in the Maratha cavalry –
 - **Bargirs** – equipped and paid by the state.
 - **Silahdars** – maintained by the nobles.
- The forts were carefully supervised, Mavali soldiers and gunners were appointed there.
- Three men of equal rank were placed in charge of each fort to guard against treachery.
- By the end of his reign, Shivaji had about 240 forts. Shivaji also built a powerful navy for guarding the Maratha ports and collecting taxes from the incoming and outgoing ships.

Revenue

- The revenue system of Shivaji was **based on that of Malik Amber of Ahmednagar**.
- The **measuring rod (lathi) was used for measuring land**.
- Lands were also classified into **three categories** – paddy fields, garden lands and hilly tracts.
- He appointed his own **revenue officials called Karkuns** and reduced the powers of the existing Kulkarnis and Deshmukhs.
- **Chauth and sardeshmukhi were the two major sources of revenue** that were collected in the neighbouring territories of the Mughal empire or Deccan Sultanates (and not in the Maratha kingdom).
- **Chauth was one-fourth of the land revenue** paid to the Marathas in order to avoid the Maratha raids.
- **Sardeshmukhi** was an additional levy of ten percent on those lands on which the Marathas claimed hereditary rights.

Successors of Shivaji

- There ensued a war of succession after the death of Shivaji between his sons, **Shambaji and Rajaram**.
- **Shambaji emerged victorious** but later he was captured and executed by the Mughals. **Rajaram succeeded the throne** but the Mughals made him to flee to the Ginjee fort. He died at Satara.
- He was succeeded by his minor son **Shivaji II with his mother Tara Bai as regent**.
- The next ruler was **Shahu** in whose reign the Peshwas rose to power.

Shambaji (1680-1689)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the war of succession, Sambhaji, Shivaji's elder son, defeated Rajaram, Shivaji's younger son. • He resumed his father's expansionist policies, as well as his long relationship with the Deccan Sultanates. • In AD 1682, the Mughal emperor Aurangzeb led his entire imperial court, administration, and troops into South India, conquering the Sultanates of Bijapur and Golconda. • He offered protection and assistance to Aurangzeb's rebellious son, Akbar II.
---------------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A Mughal noble captured and executed him at Sangameswar.
Rajaram (1689-1700)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He began the Marathas' legacy of expansionist policy by attacking Mughal territories in Deccan. In 1689, he fled from Rajgarh to Jinji due to a Mughal invasion in which Rajgarh was captured, along with Sambhaji's wife and son (Shahu). Rajaram died in Satara, which had become the capital following the Mughal conquest of Jinji in 1698. Rajaram established the post of Pratinidhi, bringing the total number of ministers to nine (Pratinidhi+Ashtapradhan).
Tarabai (1700-1707)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rajaram was succeeded by his minor son Shivaji II, who was cared for by his mother Tarabai. Tarabai continued her fight against the Mughals. Tarabai, Rajaram's widow, gave the throne to Shivaji, the son, and became regent. She provided stability to the Maratha state during times of civil and military crisis. Mughals dispatched Tarabai with the assistance of a Chitpavan Brahman named Balaji Vishwanath.
Shahu (1707-1749)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah released Shahu, sparking a civil war between him and Tarabai. Shahu defeated Tarabai at the Battle of Khed in 1707, and took control of Satara. During his reign, the Peshwaship rose to prominence and the Maratha kingdom was transformed into a confederate empire. During his reign, the Maratha kingdom was divided into two parts: Kolhapur was ruled by Tarabai, and Satara was ruled by Shahu. The two feuds were finally settled in 1731 by the 'Treaty of Warna.'

UPSC GENERAL STUDIES (GS) ANSWER WRITING AND ESSAYS

**Need personal evaluation, guidance, and discussions
for
GS Answers and Essays?**

Become UPSC fit with us.

**We will check, guide, and improve your Content, Command,
and Art of Writing.**

**Get regular and complete assistance for writing best answers
and essays from a highly experienced UPSC expert.**

Mr. Ritesh Kumar Singh (Ex-Civil Servant)

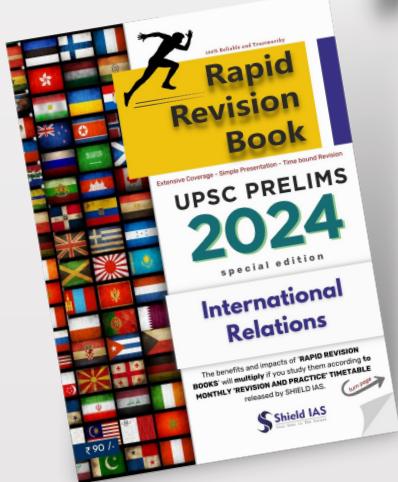
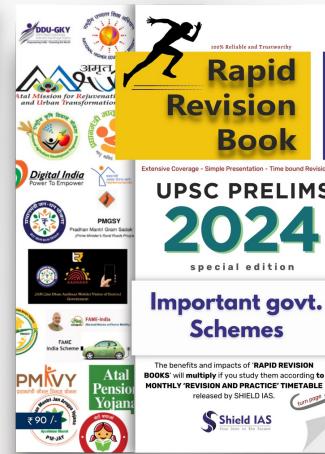
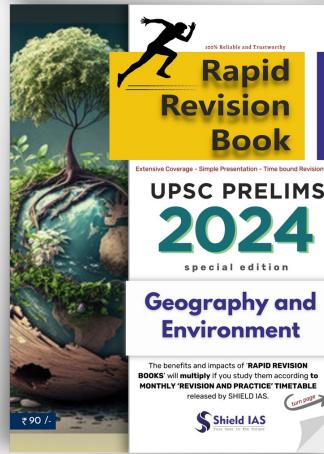
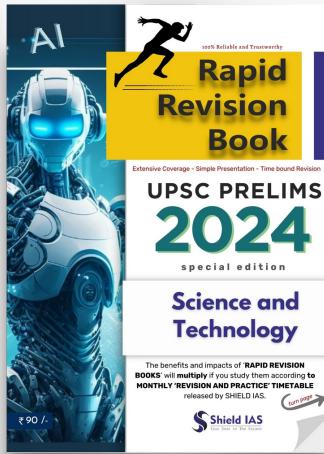
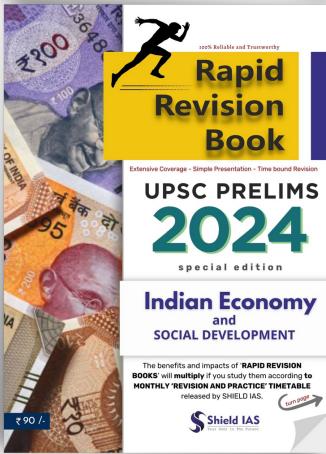
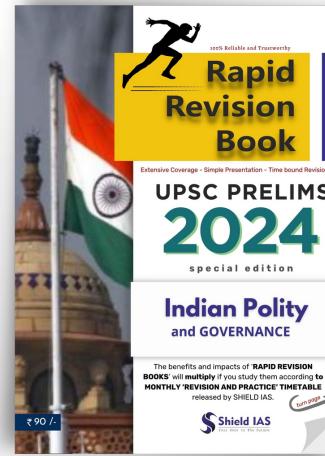
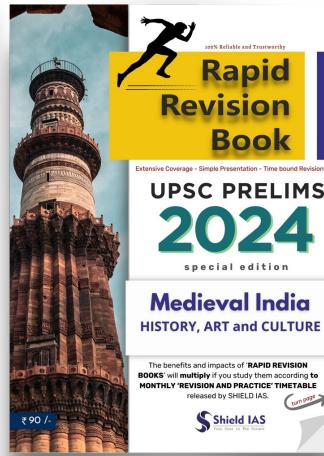
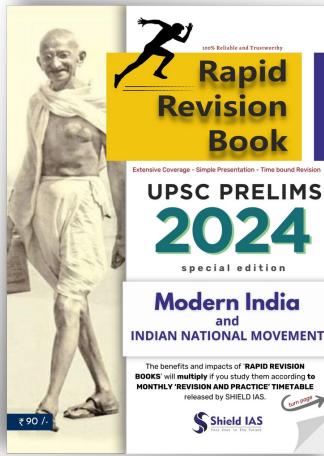
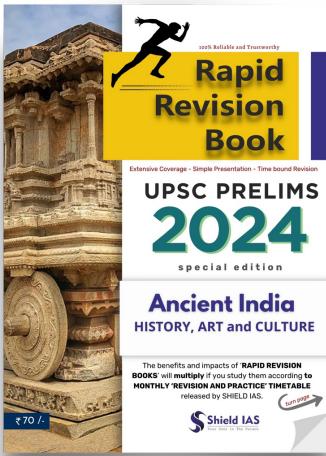
**Ex- Sr. Faculty & Head Content and Quality Management,
Rau's IAS Study Circle, New Delhi**

The Quality is here now!

(No charges applicable)

Contact: 7037272363





UPSC PRELIMS special edition

The benefits and impacts of 'RAPID REVISION BOOKS' will multiply if you study them according to MONTHLY 'REVISION AND PRACTICE' TIMETABLE released by SHIELD IAS.

Extensive Coverage - Simple Presentation - Time bound Revision

@shieldias @shieldias @shieldias Facebook.com/shieldias Instagram.com/shieldias +91 7303692587

Website
www.shieldias.in

Email
contact@shieldias.in

Phone
011-46512150, 7037272363



First Floor, 1/26, Vikas Marg, Near Metro Station, Laxmi Nagar, New Delhi. Metro pillar No. 24

For Business Inquiries: 9540411855